

# Content Server Installation Guide



Version 5.3 SP3  
July 2006

Copyright © 1994-2006 EMC Corporation. All rights reserved.

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Preface</b>	11
<b>Chapter 1     Server Installation Quick Start</b>	13
Installing full-text indexing	13
If you are an experienced Content Server user	13
If you are creating a new installation	13
If you are creating a new single-repository distributed configuration	14
If you are upgrading a repository	14
Other Content Server tasks	15
<b>Chapter 2     Planning for Content Server Installation</b>	17
About installation	17
Effects of installation	18
Additional effects on a Windows host	21
Effects of upgrading	21
Operating systems and databases	22
Other required software	22
Database requirement	23
Connection broker requirement	23
Requirements for full-text indexing	23
Index agent	23
Index server	24
Apache Tomcat application server	24
SMTP mail server requirement on Windows	24
Documentum Administrator	24
Host requirements	25
Required ports	25
Application servers and WDK applications	26
Network requirements and topologies	27
System sizing	27
Java method server	27
Configuration decisions	28
Full-text indexing	28
Express or custom configuration	28
Repository size	29
Client connection types	29
Installing DocApps	30
Installing a distributed configuration	30
Global registry	31
Trusted Content Services	33
Content Services for EMC Centera	33
Content Storage Services	34
Collaborative Edition	34

Retention Policy Services.....	35
Repository name and ID .....	35
Internationalization decisions.....	36
Server host code page .....	36
Server host locale.....	36
Data dictionary locales.....	37
Database code page .....	37
Planning for a Content Server upgrade .....	38
Planning to upgrade a server installation .....	38
Change for Tomcat application server startup on UNIX.....	39
<b>Chapter 3      Preparing for Content Server Installation .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Windows host preparation .....	41
Setting the PATH environment variable .....	42
Running WDK applications on the Content Server host.....	42
Restricted characters .....	43
Regional settings .....	43
SMTP server on Windows .....	43
Authentication domains on Windows 2000.....	44
Distributed configurations and UTC time.....	44
Setting up the installation owner account .....	44
The installation owner in SQL Server repositories .....	45
Setting up the repository owner account .....	46
Setting up repository user accounts .....	47
UNIX and Linux host preparation .....	48
Restricted characters .....	48
Running WDK applications on the Content Server host.....	48
XWindows requirement .....	49
Installing remotely.....	49
Performing the root task.....	49
The /var/tmp directory .....	50
Setting up the installation directories .....	50
Default operating system permissions on directories and files .....	51
Distributed configurations and UTC time.....	51
Shared memory and semaphore requirements .....	51
Required Groups .....	51
The installation owner group .....	52
Required individual accounts .....	52
Setting up the installation owner account .....	52
Setting up the repository owner account .....	54
Repository users .....	55
Setting up the services file .....	55
Preparing for the global registry .....	56
Preparing for a Content Server upgrade .....	57
Supported upgrade paths.....	58
Windows with Oracle .....	58
Windows with SQL Server .....	58
Windows with DB2.....	58
Solaris with Oracle.....	59
Solaris with Sybase .....	59
AIX with Oracle .....	59
AIX with DB2.....	59
HP-UX with Oracle.....	59
Upgrading full-text indexes.....	60
Backing up the repository .....	60
Backing up formats.....	60

	Upgrading distributed configurations .....	60
	Apache Tomcat and the Java Method Server .....	61
	Documentum Foundation Classes on Windows hosts .....	62
	Documentum Foundation Classes on UNIX and Linux hosts .....	62
	Migrating the database to UTF-8 .....	62
	Running the consistency checker .....	63
	Upgrading older repositories.....	63
	The database_refresh_interval key .....	64
	Creating a repository copy to test an upgrade.....	64
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation .....</b>	<b>69</b>
	Requirements for all databases .....	69
	Local or remote database installation .....	70
	Database code page .....	70
	English and localized version of the database .....	70
	Database service on Windows .....	70
	Repository size .....	71
	Remote Content Servers and the database_conn key in the server.ini file .....	71
	Database client and remote Content Servers .....	71
	Repository owner account.....	71
	Database administrator account.....	72
	System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2.....	72
	Oracle requirements .....	73
	Oracle optimization .....	74
	Oracle database aliases.....	74
	Entries in tnsnames.ora file.....	74
	Oracle repository sizes .....	75
	SQL Server requirements .....	75
	Configuring SQL Server for Internationalization.....	76
	Configuring SQL Server Case Sensitivity .....	76
	Configuring an ODBC Data Source for SQL Server .....	76
	SQL Server repository sizes .....	77
	Sybase requirements .....	78
	Sybase parameters.....	79
	Enabling the UTF-8 code page on Sybase .....	79
	Setting the Sybase 12.5 page size.....	80
	Sybase directory structure .....	81
	Sybase connections .....	81
	Sybase repository sizes .....	81
	DB2 requirements.....	81
	Installing and configuring DB2 .....	83
	Using the Performance Wizard .....	84
	Configuring DB2 From the Control Center .....	86
	Configuring DB2 From the command line .....	87
	Running multiple Documentum Servers on the DB2 host .....	88
	DB2 repository sizes .....	89
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Express Installation .....</b>	<b>91</b>
	Creating the Server software installation on the host .....	92
	Configuring the Server and repository .....	95
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Custom Installation .....</b>	<b>101</b>
	Creating the Server software installation on the host .....	102
	Configuring the Server and repository .....	105

<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Installing Remote Servers in Distributed Configurations</b>	113
	Creating the server software installation on the remote host	113
	Configuring the remote Content Server	117
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Upgrading Content Server</b>	119
	Before you upgrade	119
	Upgrading a distributed configuration	120
	Upgrading the Server software installation on the host	122
	Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository	126
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Postinstallation Tasks</b>	131
	Reviewing the server installation logs	131
	Enabling a repository as a global registry	132
	Enabling the Surrogate Get method in UNIX distributed configurations	133
	Running dm_root_task manually on UNIX or Linux systems	134
	SMTP server on Windows	134
	Changing the default passphrase	134
	Administrative tool script	135
	Starting and stopping Content Servers and connection brokers	135
	Starting and stopping the Java method server	136
	On Windows	136
	On UNIX and Linux	137
	Adding users and groups to a repository	137
	Enabling jobs after installation	138
	Update Statistics	138
	Enabling the Purge Audit job	138
	Enabling the Log Purge job	138
	Changing the installation owner account	139
	The assume user and change password programs	139
	Assume user	140
	Change Password	140
	Backing up key store files	140
	Creating additional repositories or connection brokers	140
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Uninstalling Content Server</b>	143
	Requirements	143
	Order of uninstalling	143
	Deleting a remote Content Server	144
	Deleting a repository	145
	Deleting a connection broker	146
	Uninstalling a Content Server software installation	147
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Preinstallation Checklists</b>	149
	Content Server checklists	149
	Preinstallation checklist	150
	Preupgrade checklist	152
	Content Server installation checklist	154

	New repository creation checklist .....	155
	Full-text indexing checklist.....	156
	Repository upgrade checklist .....	158
	Connection broker configuration checklist.....	159
	Database checklists .....	159
	Oracle checklist .....	160
	SQL Server checklist .....	160
	Sybase checklist.....	162
	DB2 checklist.....	162
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>Required Environment Variables on UNIX and Linux Hosts .....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>Troubleshooting Content Server Installation .....</b>	<b>171</b>
	Determining what went wrong.....	171
	Recovering from a failed repository configuration or upgrade .....	174
	Enabling tracing in repository configuration scripts .....	175
	Recovering from a stalled Content Server upgrade.....	176
<b>Appendix D</b>	<b>Content Server Installation Directories and Repository Configuration Scripts .....</b>	<b>179</b>
	Content Server installation file structure.....	179
	_uninst .....	180
	Data.....	180
	DBA .....	180
	Fulltext .....	180
	Product.....	181
	Server_Uninstall .....	181
	Share .....	181
	Additional directories .....	182
	Scripts run during installation or upgrade .....	183
	Configuration objects.....	185
<b>Appendix E</b>	<b>Object Type Categories for Oracle Database Storage .....</b>	<b>187</b>
	Type categories for tablespace specifications.....	187
	Type categories for extent allocation .....	188
	Object types categorized as large .....	188
	Object types categorized as small.....	189
	Object types categorized as default .....	189
<b>Appendix F</b>	<b>Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables .....</b>	<b>191</b>
	Defining the tablespace .....	192
	FUNCTION_SPECIFIC_STORAGE .....	192
	TYPE_SPECIFIC_STORAGE .....	192
	Defining the Oracle extent sizes .....	193
	Changing storage parameters for individual object types on Oracle.....	194
	Changing storage parameters for categories of types on Oracle.....	195
	User-defined object types .....	196
<b>Appendix G</b>	<b>Installing Content Server With Microsoft Cluster Services .....</b>	<b>197</b>
	Preinstallation requirements.....	197
	Overview .....	198
	Choosing a configuration .....	198

Configuring an active/passive cluster .....	199
Creating the cluster resource group .....	200
Creating the Server installation on the host.....	200
Configuring the repository .....	203
Configuring the connection brokers .....	210
Creating additional cluster resources .....	211
Verifying failover.....	212
Configuring an active/active cluster .....	212
Creating the first cluster resource group.....	213
Creating the Server installation on the hosts .....	214
Configuring the first repository .....	216
Configuring the second cluster resource group .....	223
Configuring the second repository .....	224
Modifying server.ini and dmcl.ini.....	230
Creating the connection broker generic service resource .....	230
Creating the Content Server service resource .....	231
Verifying failover.....	232
Upgrading a repository installed with Cluster Services .....	232
<b>Appendix H   Configuring Multiple Servers on a Single Host for a Particular                   Repository .....</b>	<b>235</b>
Windows hosts.....	235
UNIX hosts .....	237



## List of Figures

Figure G-1. Active/passive cluster configuration .....	199
Figure G-2. Active/active cluster configuration.....	199

## List of Tables

Table 3–1.	Required environment variables .....	53
Table 3–2.	Precopying tasks .....	65
Table 8–1.	Parameters required by dm_acs_install.ebs script .....	121
Table A–1.	Preinstallation tasks .....	150
Table A–2.	Preupgrade checklist .....	153
Table A–3.	Installation checklist .....	155
Table A–4.	New repository preinstallation checklist .....	155
Table A–5.	Checklist for full-text indexing .....	157
Table A–6.	Preinstallation checklist for upgrading a repository .....	158
Table A–7.	Connection broker configuration preinstallation checklist .....	159
Table A–8.	Oracle preinstallation checklist .....	160
Table A–9.	SQL Server checklist .....	161
Table A–10.	Sybase checklist .....	162
Table A–11.	DB2 checklist .....	162
Table B–1.	Required environment variables .....	165
Table B–2.	Required database environment variables .....	168
Table C–1.	Troubleshooting checklist.....	172
Table D–1.	Subdirectories created during installation .....	182

## Purpose of the manual

This manual contains information and instructions you need to install or upgrade EMC Documentum Content Server™ on Windows, UNIX, or Linux with the Oracle, DB2, SQL Server, or Sybase relational database management systems. It describes decisions you must make and requirements that must be met before you install the server. It also provides step-by-step instructions for installing and upgrading Content Server.

If you are installing full-text indexing, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## Intended audience

This manual is intended for the person installing Content Server. Typically, a system administrator installs the software. After installation is complete, a repository administrator can add users and groups to the repository so that users can begin using the installation.

## Revision history

The following revisions have been made to this document:

### Revision History

Date	Description
July 2006	Initial publication

## Terminology changes

Two common terms are changed in 5.3 and later documentation:

- Docbases are now called repositories.
- DocBrokers are now called connection brokers.

# Acknowledgements

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation ([www.apache.org](http://www.apache.org)). It installs Apache Tomcat 4.1.27.

## Server Installation Quick Start

This chapter discusses which sections of this manual you must read in order to install or upgrade Content Server successfully. Before you read them, review the *Content Server Release Notes*. If you are upgrading Content Server, review the sections of the *System Migration Guide* that discuss changes and migration issues in Content Server.

### Installing full-text indexing

The *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide* contains the configuration and installation information required to install the full-text indexing system.

### If you are an experienced Content Server user

If you are an experienced Content Server user and have created new repositories and upgraded existing repositories, use the checklists in [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#) as a guide to which sections of this manual to review in order to install or upgrade this release of Content Server. Ensure that you review the *Content Server Release Notes*, which contain a list of new and changed features. Ensure that you review the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

### If you are creating a new installation

If you are creating a new repository and Content Server, review these chapters:

- [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#) contains detailed information on the requirements for installing Content Server and on the decisions you must make before you begin to prepare the database installation and Content Server host.

- [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#) contains detailed instructions for configuring the Content Server host on Windows, UNIX, and Linux.

You do not need to read the section on preparing the host for an upgrade.

- [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#) contains detailed information and instructions on preparing the database installation that supports Content Server and the repository.

Review the requirements in this chapter with your database administrator.

- [Chapter 9, Postinstallation Tasks](#) contains instructions on additional steps that must be completed after the Server is installed.
- [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#) contains checklists to help you ensure that all necessary tasks are completed successfully before Content Server is installed.

After you review these chapters, use the instructions in [Chapter 5, Express Installation](#) for a fast Content Server installation in which default values are used, or use the instructions in [Chapter 6, Custom Installation](#) for a customized Content Server installation in which you can control various database parameters and edit repository configuration scripts. The *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide* contains instructions for installing the full-text indexing system.

## If you are creating a new single-repository distributed configuration

If you are creating a new single-repository distributed configuration, a configuration program separate from the Content Server configuration program is used for installing remote (content-file) servers and creating the storage areas on the remote hosts and related location objects. [Chapter 7, Installing Remote Servers in Distributed Configurations](#) contains instructions for installing and configuring remote servers in distributed configurations. Note that remote Content Server hosts must meet the same preinstallation requirements as the primary Content Server host.

Review the *Distributed Content Guide* before you install a distributed configuration.

## If you are upgrading a repository

If you are upgrading an existing repository and Content Server installation, review the *Content Server Release Notes* and read the following documentation:

- The sections of the *System Migration Guide* that discuss changes to Content Server.

- [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#) contains detailed information on the requirements for installing Content Server and on the decisions you must make before you begin to prepare the database installation and Content Server host.
- The *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide* contains information on planning for full-text indexing and installing the full-text indexing software.
- [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#) contains detailed instructions for configuring the Content Server host on Windows, UNIX, and Linux.

[Preparing for a Content Server upgrade, page 57](#) contains information on supported upgrade paths and other upgrade issues.

- [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#) contains detailed information and instructions on preparing the database installation that supports Content Server and the repository.

Review the requirements in this chapter with your database administrator.

- [Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server](#) contains instructions for upgrading the Server.
- If you are upgrading a pre-5.3 SP1 repository that uses the distributed content model, read [Upgrading a distributed configuration, page 120](#).

The new configuration program for remote Content Servers cannot be used to upgrade remote servers in distributed content environments created before 5.3 SP1. [Upgrading a distributed configuration, page 120](#) describes the process you must use to upgrade existing remote servers.

- [Chapter 9, Postinstallation Tasks](#) contains instructions on additional steps that must be completed after the Server is upgraded.
- [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#) contains checklists to help you ensure that all necessary tasks are completed successfully before Content Server is upgraded.

## Other Content Server tasks

Review other chapters in the manual as needed:

- [Chapter 10, Uninstalling Content Server](#) contains information on deleting repositories and connection brokers and uninstalling the Content Server and full-text indexing software.
- [Appendix C, Troubleshooting Content Server Installation](#) contains information to help solve problems you encounter when you install or upgrade the Server.
- [Appendix D, Content Server Installation Directories and Repository Configuration Scripts](#) contains information about the directory structure created by installing Content Server and the scripts that run during repository configuration.
- [Appendix E, Object Type Categories for Oracle Database Storage](#) contains information on Oracle database categories

- [Appendix F, Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables](#) contains information on customizing Oracle and DB2 to optimize database storage.
- [Appendix G, Installing Content Server With Microsoft Cluster Services](#) contains information on installing or upgrading Content Server under Microsoft Cluster Services.
- [Appendix H, Configuring Multiple Servers on a Single Host for a Particular Repository](#) contains information on creating additional server in an existing installation.



# Planning for Content Server Installation

This chapter contains the information you need to plan a Content Server installation or upgrade. It contains the following topics:

- [About installation, page 17](#)
- [Operating systems and databases , page 22](#)
- [Other required software, page 22](#)
- [Host requirements, page 25](#)
- [Network requirements and topologies, page 27](#)
- [System sizing, page 27](#)
- [Configuration decisions, page 28](#)
- [Repository name and ID, page 35](#)
- [Internationalization decisions, page 36](#)
- [Planning for a Content Server upgrade, page 38](#)

Before installing or upgrading the Server, review this chapter, [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#), and [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#). Complete the checklists in [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#). Perform any tasks described in [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#) that apply to your installation.

Content Server does not function properly unless the database is installed correctly. Review the requirements in [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#), carefully and ensure that your database installation meets these requirements. If full-text indexing is required in any repositories you create or upgrade, review the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## About installation

Content Server installation has two stages. The first stage copies the server software from the installation media to the proper directories on the Content Server host machine and, on Windows, modifies the Registry and environment variables. The software installed allows you to create Content Servers, repositories, and connection brokers.

- Content Servers manage the documents in the repositories and respond to client requests.
- Repositories store content files, metadata associated with the content files, and other objects used by Content Server
- Connection brokers provide repository connection information to client applications.

Installing the server software also installs the Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment if DFC is not already installed. This process creates a *server installation* on the host.

On Windows, only one installation can be created on a particular host. The installation can have multiple repositories and multiple instances of Content Server running against each repository. All servers and repositories in the installation have the same version number.

On UNIX and Linux, multiple installation can be created on a particular host, including installations of different server versions. For example, a 5.2 installation and a 5.3 SP1 installation can exist on a single UNIX host. Each installation can have multiple repositories and multiple instances of Content Server running against each of the repositories. All servers and repositories in a single installation have the same version number.

All repositories in an installation must be upgraded at the same time, on Windows and UNIX platforms.

Instructions for creating additional servers on the repository host are provided in [Appendix H, Configuring Multiple Servers on a Single Host for a Particular Repository](#).

The second stage starts the server and configures the repository. It also configures and starts the connection broker service. The second stage requires the person performing the installation to provide information about the repository and components such as the RDBMS.

## Effects of installation

On Windows, UNIX, and Linux hosts, installation typically has these effects:

- Java and the Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) are installed.
- The Content Server software is installed.
- A Content Server is created and started.

Content Server provides services such as document versioning, check in and check out, workflow, and document lifecycle. Refer to *Content Server Fundamentals* and the *Content Server Administrator's Guide* for complete information on Content Server.

- The Java method server (Apache Tomcat) is installed and started.

A single Tomcat instance serves all repositories created from a particular server software installation. You can optionally use Tomcat for running custom Java methods. (Do not use the instance for purposes other than running Java methods.) For more information, refer to “Application Server” in the chapter call Methods and Jobs, in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*. For information on starting and stopping Tomcat, refer to [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).

- An ACS server is created and started.

An ACS server is a content server that serves content, but does not interact with the repository’s database or metadata. The ACS server runs in the same Tomcat instance as the Java method server. An ACS server is created in any Content Server or remote Content Server installation. For more information about ACS servers, refer to the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide* and the *Distributed Configuration Guide*.

- In an express configuration, a connection broker is installed and started; in a custom configuration, you can optionally create and start one or more connection brokers.

A connection broker provides repository connection information to client applications. For more information on connection brokers, refer to the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*.

- The Dmbasic method server is started.

This is a process that executes Docbasic methods. For more information, refer to “Method Server” in Chapter 4, Methods and Jobs, in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*.

- A repository is configured.

The repository consists of content files and object metadata. The metadata is stored in database tables.

- Scripts are run to configure the repository.

For more information on the scripts, refer to [Appendix D, Content Server Installation Directories and Repository Configuration Scripts](#).

- More disk space is used in the installation directory.
- More disk space is used on the drive used by the RDBMS.
- New subdirectories are created.

For more information on the installation directory structure, refer to [Appendix D, Content Server Installation Directories and Repository Configuration Scripts](#).

- A keystore is created, containing a passphrase that is used to encrypt passwords used for accessing the database and repository.

The passphrase created during installation can be changed after installation.

- Several users are created in the repository.

These are:

- The repository owner

This is the account used to connect to the database. For more information, refer to the sections on the repository owner in [Windows host preparation, page 41](#) or [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#).

- The installation owner

This is a repository account for the account used to create the server installation and configure the repository. The installation owner is a Superuser, with the ability to create other users and perform administrative tasks in the repository. For more information, refer to the sections on the installation owner in [Windows host preparation, page 41](#) or [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#).

- Content Rendition Server Windows and Macintosh users

These are the accounts used by Content Rendition Services to retrieve rendition requests that are queued in the repository. For more information, refer to the documentation for Content Rendition Services.

- Media Services user

This is the account used by EMC Documentum Media Server to retrieve requests to Media Server that are queued in the repository. For more information, refer to the documentation for Media Services.

- Full-text indexing user

This is the user to whom index queue items are directed. For more information on the full-text indexing user, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

- Global registry user

This is the user whose account is used by DFC installations to connect to the repository and retrieve service-based objects (SBOs) required by DFC client applications or to access network locations. The user is created in all repositories, but is activated only in repositories designated as global registries. For more information on the user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#).

- Default content storage areas are created.

- `filestore_01` is used for all content formats except thumbnails and streaming media.
- `thumbnail_storage_01` is used for thumbnail content files.
- `streaming_storage_01` is used for streaming content.
- `replicate_temp_store` is used on a replication target host to hold the dump file transferred during replication jobs.
- `replica_filestore_01` is used in object replication on the target repository for replicated content files.

Streaming content and thumbnail content are created by Media Services. For more information, refer to the documentation for Media Services. You can alter existing storage areas or add new storage areas after installation.

## Additional effects on a Windows host

Installing Content Server has the following additional effects on a Windows system:

- A menu item called Documentum is created (or, if the item already exists, it is modified).
- An icon labeled Documentum Server Manager is added to the Start menu.
- A Content Server installation directory is created and files are copied to it.
- The following Windows user rights are given to the user performing the installation, unless the user already has these rights:
  - Act as part of the operating system
  - Create a token object
  - Increase quotas
  - Log on as a service
  - Log on locally
  - Replace a process-level token
  - The Windows registry is modified to reflect the new repository.
  - The Windows TCP services file is modified.

## Effects of upgrading

Upgrading an existing installation has the following effects:

- Content Server is stopped and then restarted.
- An ACS Server is installed and started.
- Type definitions are modified and new type definitions may be added.
- Existing full-text index, TDK collect, and TDK index objects are removed from the repository.

New full-text indexes must be created for 5.3 and later repositories. New full-text index objects are associated with the new indexes. Refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide* for complete information on installing the full-text indexing components.

- New dm\_format objects are created in the repository.
- Some dm\_format objects are updated.

If you modified any format objects, back up the changes before upgrading the repository, which overwrites any changes.

- Some system administration objects are created or modified.
- New directories are created.
- Creates or modifies the Desktop Client configuration objects, templates, and repository folders.
- All passwords are encrypted.
- On Windows, upgrading may affect the port on which a repository listens, if you are using Trusted Content Services and the next available port is not sequential.

Upgrading Content Server does not affect the content in the repository, which remains in the repository and requires no special migration.

## Operating systems and databases

Content Server runs under the following operating system and database combinations:

- On Windows with Oracle, DB2, and SQL Server

Refer to [Windows host preparation, page 41](#) for information on configuring Windows for Content Server.

- On Solaris with Oracle and Sybase
- On HP-UX with Oracle
- On AIX with Oracle and DB2
- On Linux with Oracle

English version and the localized Japanese and Korean versions of SQL Server and Oracle are supported.

Refer to the *Content Server Release Notes* for complete information on the specific operating system and RDBMS versions you need for running Content Server.

## Other required software

Installing and running Content Server requires certain other software, as detailed below. Some of this software is installed when Content Server is installed.

## Database requirement

A properly-configured relational database management system must be available locally or remotely. For full information on database requirements, refer to [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#).

## Connection broker requirement

Your network must include a running *connection broker*. The connection broker provides server connection information to client applications. You can install and start a connection broker on the Content Server host as part of the installation process, or your server can project to a connection broker located on a different host. If your server projects to a connection broker on another host, you must provide the host name and the port on which the connection broker listens during server configuration. There can be one or more connection brokers on a network, and your repository can project to multiple connection brokers.

The default port on which a connection broker listens is 1489. If multiple connection brokers are installed on a particular host, each connection broker must be assigned a unique port number on which to listen.

For more information on connection brokers, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Requirements for full-text indexing

If full-text indexing is required in your repositories, the index agent and index server must be installed. For a complete description of the supported configurations for full-text indexing, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## Index agent

The index agent prepares documents in a repository for full-text indexing and directs the documents to its associated index server. (Full-text indexing allows users to easily locate documents containing specific text.) A particular index agent runs against only one repository. If you use full-text indexing, you must have an index agent installed for each repository.

## Index server

The index server creates and maintains full-text indexes and responds to full-text queries from Content Server. An index server can serve more than one repository.

## Apache Tomcat application server

The Apache Tomcat application server is installed on the Content Server host and is required for running the `dm_event_template_sender` method, the job sequencing utility, and the LDAP Synchronization job.

Tomcat is required by EMC Documentum Content Server. It supports a variety of features and licenses in the server. Use of an alternative application server, instead of Apache Tomcat, is not supported.

## SMTP mail server requirement on Windows

Content Server uses the SMTP mail protocol for sending routers, tasks, and notifications to user mailboxes.

On Windows hosts, Content Server must be able to connect to an SMTP mail server. The SMTP server can be an SMTP server located on your network or it can be the SMTP server provided with Windows 2000. During the installation or upgrade procedure, you must provide the name or IP address of the computer hosting the SMTP server.

If a valid SMTP server host name is not available during installation, supply an invalid host name and the installation will finish. Do not leave the field blank. After installation, add a valid SMTP server host name to the `smtp_server` attribute of the server config object. Reinitialize the server after you update the server config object.

## Documentum Administrator

Most repository and Content Server administration is performed using Documentum Administrator, a WDK application that is installed on a supported application server and accessed using a supported browser. For information on installing Documentum Administrator, refer to the *WDK and Applications Installation Guide*. For information on using Documentum Administrator, refer to the online help system for Documentum Administrator.



# Host requirements

The hardware and operating system requirements for installing and running Content Server are listed in the *Content Server Release Notes*.

Content Server can be installed in many configurations. In the most basic configuration, which is typically used in development environments, the Server, index agent, index server, and database are installed on the same host and the content files reside on the same host. In production environments, the Server and database are often on different hosts. The database instance does not need to be used exclusively for Content Server.

For performance reasons, it is recommended that you install the index server and index agent on a host separate from the Content Server. For additional information on supported full-text indexing configurations, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

You can run multiple Content Servers against one repository, with multiple Servers on the repository host or on other hosts. For more information on Server configuration options, refer to the *Distributed Configuration Guide*. If you are installing a distributed configuration, the remote Content Server hosts must meet the same preinstallation requirements as the primary Content Server host.

For information on creating multiple servers on the repository host, refer to [Appendix H, Configuring Multiple Servers on a Single Host for a Particular Repository](#).

If you run multiple servers against a single repository, all servers must enable Trusted Content Services or none must enable Trusted Content Services. Running both trusted and non-trusted Content Servers against a single repository is not supported. For more information about Trusted Content Services, refer to [Trusted Content Services, page 33](#).

A federation may contain different Content Server versions and may contain a mix of trusted and non-trusted Content Servers.

There are specific configuration requirements for Content Server on Windows, UNIX, and Linux hosts. These requirements are discussed below in [Windows host preparation, page 41](#) and [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#).

Your host computer's video card setting must be at least 256 colors (16 bit) for the graphical installer to work correctly.

The host computer's name must use only ASCII characters.

## Required ports

Content Server and software associated with the Server require that a number of ports are available:

- Content Server requires two consecutive port numbers to be assigned to native connections and secure connections.

On Windows, the ports are determined by the server configuration program. On UNIX, the ports are assigned by you in the services file before the installation process begins. Refer to [Setting up the services file, page 55](#) for more information.

- The Java method server and ACS server run in a Tomcat instance that requires two ports on which to listen.
- The connection broker requires a port on which to listen.

The default connection broker port is 1489. Refer to [Connection broker requirement, page 23](#) for more information about connection brokers.

- The index agent, which may be installed on the Content Server host, runs in a Tomcat instance that requires two ports on which to listen.

The default index agent ports are 9081 and 9008.

- The index server, which may be installed on the Content Server host, requires an available range of four thousand (4,000) consecutive ports.

The default range is from 13000 to 17000.

## Application servers and WDK applications

If your environment includes WDK applications such as Webtop or Web Publisher, for performance and security reasons it is strongly recommend that you install the application server and any WDK applications on a host remote from the Content Server host.

If you decide to install the application server and WDK applications on the Content Server host, it is strongly recommended that you use an account that is not an EMC Documentum user for installing the application server and WDK applications. If the application server installation owner is an EMC Documentum user, a security hole is created because trusted login allows any EMC Documentum user who has successfully connected to a host to connect to Content Server without providing a password.

However, using different user accounts to install multiple EMC Documentum applications on a single host undermines version control and product interoperability because the version-control mechanism used by the installers is based on the ISMP per-user vital product registry. It cannot validate or enforce version control and guarantee product interoperability unless all products are installed using the same system account.

## Network requirements and topologies

Content Server requires a properly-configured TCP/IP network. The network must be able to support the required number of users and must have sufficient capacity for the number of client connections to the server that your business requires and for transferring content files from client hosts to the repository.

If you are installing a distributed configuration, there are special network requirements. For a brief description of distributed configurations, refer to [Installing a distributed configuration, page 30](#). For complete information on the requirement, refer to the *Distributed Configuration Guide*.

If you are installing on a host computer that uses multiple network cards, by default Content Server only binds to the first network card. For information on changing the binding behavior so that Content Server binds to a different IP address, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## System sizing

*System sizing* is the process of determining what hardware, software, and network configurations will provide the best performance for users at the lowest cost to the enterprise. Another term for system sizing is capacity planning. EMC Documentum provides tools and guides for system sizing. These are available on the Technical Support Web site and MarketingNet.

## Java method server

Content Server uses Apache Tomcat for running Java methods.

If you are installing a new Content Server, a Tomcat instance is created and the Java method server is installed by default. It requires two ports. The Tomcat instance is also used for running the ACS server.

Do not use the installed Tomcat instance for any purpose other than running Java methods and the ACS server, including running Documentum WDK applications or Documentum Business Process Services.

On Windows, the Java method server is installed as a Windows service and is configured to start automatically as a service.

Apache Tomcat, installed with Content Server, is required by EMC Documentum Content Server. It supports a variety of features and licenses in the server. Use of an alternative application server, instead of Apache Tomcat, is not supported.

# Configuration decisions

Before you install Content Server, decide whether to use express or custom repository configuration, whether you are installing a distributed configuration, whether you are installing Trusted Content Services, and whether you are installing Content Services for EMC Centera . The following topics are discussed in this section:

- [Full-text indexing, page 28](#)
- [Express or custom configuration, page 28](#)
- [Repository size, page 29](#)
- [Client connection types, page 29](#)
- [Installing DocApps, page 30](#)
- [Installing a distributed configuration, page 30](#)
- [Global registry, page 31](#)
- [Trusted Content Services, page 33](#)
- [Content Services for EMC Centera, page 33](#)
- [Content Storage Services, page 34](#)
- [Collaborative Edition, page 34](#)

## Full-text indexing

Full-text indexing in repositories 5.3 and later requires installing and configuring the index agent and index server. For complete information on configuration choices and for installation instructions, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## Express or custom configuration

The installation procedure for Content Server gives you a choice between express and custom configuration options. The custom configuration option gives you considerable flexibility in how the repository is configured, while the express option is faster and uses many default values.

- Express configuration:
  - Uses default installation choices.
  - Allows you to install the first site in a distributed configuration
  - Automatically installs a connection broker on the Content Server host.

For additional information on installing a distributed configuration, refer to [Installing a distributed configuration, page 30](#) and to the *Distributed Configuration Guide*.

- Custom configuration:
  - Allows you to edit any of the server installation, initialization, or startup scripts
 

Use caution in editing these scripts. Errors in the scripts can cause repository errors or abort server startup. For information on each of the initialization files and installation scripts, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.
  - Allows you to choose language support for a language other than the language of the host computer's operating system
  - Allows you to install additional servers for a repository
  - Enables configuration of Content Server to run with Microsoft Cluster Services
 

Refer to [Appendix G, Installing Content Server With Microsoft Cluster Services](#), for full instructions on installing with Cluster Services enabled.
  - Allows you to install the first site in a distributed configuration

## Repository size

During repository configuration, you are asked to choose a repository size. The repository size you choose determines the sizes of the tablespaces, log file sizes, and index tablespace sizes, and also whether all of these can be configured. In a custom installation, you can also modify the initial sizes during installation. The initial sizes differ by RDBMS. For more information, refer to the individual sections for each RDBMS in [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#).

## Client connection types

During repository configuration, you are asked what type of connection clients will connection to the repository. The choices are:

- native
 

When native connections are chosen, Content Server listens for clients only on an unsecure port. Content Server refuses requests for a secure connection.
- secure
 

When secure connections are chosen, Content Server listens for clients only on a secure port, using SSL. The client and server do not use SSL authentication to authenticate each other. However, the information exchanged between the client and server is encrypted. Content Server refuses requests for an unsecure connection.

Do not set the mode to secure if you have pre-5.2 clients connecting to the repository. The connection requests from such clients will fail.

- native and secure

Content Server accepts both native and secure connection requests.

## Installing DocApps

A *DocApp* packages lifecycles, workflows, object types, alias sets, permission sets, and other objects required by an application. The DocApp must be installed in a repository before the application can store documents in that repository.

If a new repository is created in a server installation where an existing repository is loaded with a particular DocApp, you are asked during repository configuration whether to install that DocApp in the new repository. If there are multiple repositories in a server installation, and a DocApp is loaded in one of the repositories, when the other repositories are upgraded, you are asked whether to install the DocApp in the other repositories.

## Installing a distributed configuration

Repositories and Content Servers can be installed in *distributed configurations*. A distributed configuration may take one of these forms:

- A single repository with multiple servers, using a distributed storage area and content servers
- A single repository with multiple servers, using a distributed storage area and content replication
- Multiple repositories that replicate objects among themselves
- Multiple repositories organized as a federation

If you plan to set up a distributed configuration, review Chapter 1, *Distributed Models*, and Chapter 2, *Building Blocks*, of the *Distributed Configuration Guide* for information on the benefits, uses, and configuration requirements for different distributed configuration models. You can use either express or custom installation to set up the first site of a distributed configuration. If you are setting up a single-repository configuration, refer to the chapter titled *Implementing Single-Repository Models* in the *Distributed Configuration Guide* for information on setting up the other sites and for further installation information.

If you are setting up a multi-repository distributed configuration or cross-repository operations, refer to the chapter titled *Implementing Multi-Repository Models* in the *Distributed Configuration Guide* for details about additional required configuration.

If you are installing a single-repository distributed configuration, all servers must enable Trusted Content Services or none must enable Trusted Content Services. Running both trusted and non-trusted Content Servers against a single repository is not supported.

Including both trusted and non-trusted Content Servers in a repository federation is supported.

If you are creating a new single-repository distributed content configuration, use the instructions in [Chapter 7, Installing Remote Servers in Distributed Configurations](#) to create the Content Servers at the remote sites. If you are upgrading an existing distributed configuration, refer to [Upgrading distributed configurations](#), page 60.

A repository using a distributed storage area with encrypted filestores as components cannot use shared content.

EMC Documentum Web Publisher and EMC Documentum Site Caching Services are not supported in distributed configurations, in federations, or where replication is used.

If you are using distributed content, all content is copied to the primary content store for full-text indexing. Ensure that there is sufficient space on the drive where the primary store is located for all content that may be copied for full-text indexing.

If you install a distributed configuration, ensure that all host computers in the configuration are set to the same UTC time.



**Caution:** Once a repository has been configured to use distributed storage, it is not possible to revert to using nondistributed storage.

## Global registry

A global registry is a central repository used to make certain types of objects available to DFC instances throughout a Documentum installation. The global registry serves two purposes in Documentum 5.3 SP1:

- Deploying service-based business objects (SBOs)

SBOs are required by some out-of-the-box Documentum applications and may be required by your custom applications.

- Storing network location objects

Network location objects define a Web client user's location on a network. Network locations are used by Content Server to determine from which storage area content files are served to Web client end users in distributed configurations. The *Distributed Configuration Guide* contains more information on network locations objects and distributed configurations.

A global registry is required in your Documentum installation if any of the following conditions are true:

- You have a custom application that deploys any BOF 5.3 or 5.3 SP1 SBOs
- You plan to install a Documentum application that requires SBOs.

The following Documentum client applications or features use SBOs:

- Business Process Services (BPS)
- Web Services Framework
- Webtop with queue management enabled
- Webtop with the Collaborative Edition enabled

This is a separately-licensed feature for Webtop.

- Webtop with Rich Text Attributes enabled
- Digital Asset Manager with the Collaborative Edition enabled
- Any other WDK application that enables Collaborative Edition
- You use Web clients to access a distributed repository configuration.

Network locations, which must be created in a global registry repository, are required for determining the correct storage area from which to server content to Web client end users.

You must make the following decisions during repository configuration:

- Whether the repository will be enabled as a global registry

It is strongly recommended that only *one* production repository in your installation is designated as a global registry.

- If yes, the login credentials for the global registry user

This is the user that DFC instances uses to connect to the global registry repository.

If you provide the credentials, the user is created in the current repository in the active state, and the login credentials can then be provided to DFC installations on other hosts. If you do not provide the credentials, the user is created in the inactive state. To enable to repository as a global registry at a later time, use Documentum Administrator to activate the user and provide login credentials.

- If no, which global registry repository DFC on the current Content Server host will access

You must then provide the login credentials for the global registry user in that repository. The global registry repository is *not* required to be a repository on the current Content Server host. You may choose any 5.3 SP1 repository that is enabled as a global registry. The repository may be located on any host.



If you are installing a remote Content Server for a distributed content environment, you are *not* asked for global registry login credentials. DFC on the remote Content Server host does not require that information.

The global registry user is also discussed in [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

## Trusted Content Services

Trusted Content Services (TCS) is an optional Content Server feature that provides these security features:

- Encrypted filestores
- Electronic signatures on PDF documents

Electronic signatures are not supported on Linux and HP Itanium. (This does not affect *digital* signatures on those platforms.)

- Additional access control list (ACL) entries, including required groups, required group sets, permit restrictions, and extended restrictions

For more information, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

- Digital shredding

If you have obtained a license for Trusted Content Services, you can optionally install TCS when you install or upgrade to Content Server 5.3.x. TCS is enabled on a per-installation basis. If you enable TCS during server installation, all repositories created in the installation include TCS. If you do not initially enable TCS, you can run the server configuration program and enable TCS at a later time.

By default, repositories created with TCS enabled have non-encrypted filestores. The filestores can then be converted to encrypted filestores. For more information on creating encrypted filestores, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

If you are installing a single-repository distributed configuration, all servers must enable Trusted Content Services or none must enable Trusted Content Services. Running both trusted and non-trusted Content Servers against a single repository is not supported. However, in a repository federation, you can mix trusted and non-trusted repositories.

## Content Services for EMC Centera

Content-addressed storage is recommended for use when you want to store massive amounts of unchanging data, such as email archives or check images. The EMC Centera content-addressed storage system allows you to store metadata values with each piece of content in the system. You can also define a retention period for the content. If a

retention period is defined, the content cannot be removed from the storage system even if the associated document is removed from the repository.

You can enable Content Services for EMC Centera during server installation. If you do not, you can run the server configuration program at a later time and enable Content Services for EMC Centera then.

Content Services for EMC Centera is not supported on the HP Itanium platform.

For more information on creating and using content-addressed storage, refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Content Storage Services

Content Storage Services (CSS) is a feature that automates business rules governing where content files are stored. *Content assignment policies* (or assignment policies) ensure that new content files are stored in the correct file store or content-addressable store. *Migration policies* move existing content files to the correct file store or content-addressable store.

Content Storage Services is enabled during server installation. If you do not enable the feature, you can run the server configuration at a later time and enable CSS then.

## Collaborative Edition

Collaborative Edition is a feature that allows use of a rich-text editor by all users, rich-text description fields on the Properties dialog box for all folders and folder subtypes, the creation and use of note objects in the repository, and discussion threads, which can be embedded in folders, folder subtypes, and notes, with stand-alone discussion threads available for other documents and objects as well. In addition, Collaborative Edition has Rooms, which are secure areas within the repository where access is restricted to a defined membership.

This feature is enabled with a license key during server installation. If it is not enabled during installation, it can be enabled at a later time using Documentum Administrator.

If Collaborative Edition is enabled in a repository, by default, only 5.3 and later clients can access that repository. This is because installing Collaborative Edition sets two attributes on the docbase config object to restrict client access. They are:

- `oldest_client_version`, which is set to 5.3
- `check_client_version`, which is set to TRUE

If older client products must access the repository, you must manually set `check_client_version` to FALSE or set `oldest_client_version` to an earlier version.

The SBOs for Collaborative Edition are installed automatically at repository configuration, whether or not Collaborative Services is enabled in that particular repository. If you use Collaborative Services, ensure that any arbitrary 5.3 or later repository on your network is designated as a global registry and ensure that the DFC installation on the Webtop application server host is able to connect to that repository using the global registry user's credentials.

## Retention Policy Services

Retention Policy Services is a compliance-oriented feature that gives you control over how long and under what circumstances documents and other objects are retained in a repository and how the objects are disposed of at the end of the retention period. The feature is enabled with a license key during server installation. If it is not enabled during installation, it can be enabled at a later time using Documentum Administrator.

If Retention Policy Services is enabled in a repository, by default, only 5.3 and later clients can access that repository. This is because installing Retention Policy Services sets two attributes on the docbase config object to restrict client access. They are:

- `oldest_client_version`, which is set to 5.3
- `check_client_version`, which is set to TRUE

If older client products must access the repository, you must manually set `check_client_version` to FALSE or set `oldest_client_version` to an earlier version.

## Repository name and ID

Each repository must have a unique name and ID. You provide the name and ID during repository configuration.

The name for a new repository must be no longer than 32 characters. The name must consist of letters, numbers, and underscores (\_). The first character must be a letter. The repository name cannot include spaces or non-alphanumeric characters and all letters and numbers in the name must be ASCII characters.

The repository name "docu" is reserved by EMC Documentum.

The repository name is used as the name of the primary Content Server's server config object. There is a limitation of 32 characters for the length of the server config object name, and the string `repository_name.server_config_name@host_name`, which is part of the string identifying a repository at connect time, cannot exceed 120 characters in length or connect requests fail.

For remote Content Servers in distributed configurations, the name of the server config object is limited to 25 characters. The name is determined by the remote Content Server configuration program. The same restrictions apply that apply to a repository name. The name must consist of letters, numbers, and underscores (\_). The first character must be a letter. The repository name cannot include spaces or non-alphanumeric characters and all letters and numbers in the name must be ASCII characters.

The repository ID can be any number from 1 to 16777215 and must not start with a zero (0). It is strongly recommended that repository IDs are unique on your network. If two repositories on your network have the same ID, ensure that they do not project to the same connection broker.

## Internationalization decisions

Content Server runs in the UTF-8 code page. To take full advantage of Content Server's multilingual features, you must install on the correct server host code page and set the code page correctly in the database.

For additional information on how internationalization affects upgrading, refer to [Preparing for a Content Server upgrade, page 57](#). For complete information on Content Server internationalization, refer to the "Server Internationalization" chapter of *Content Server Fundamentals*.

## Server host code page

On Content Server hosts, the following host code pages are supported:

- For U.S. and Western European sites, ISO-8859\_1 (Latin-1)
- For Korean sites, EUC-KR
- For Japanese sites using UNIX, EUC-JP
- For Japanese sites using Windows, Shift\_JIS

## Server host locale

The following server host locales are supported:

- English (en)
- French (fr)
- German (de)
- Korean (ko)

- Japanese (ja)
- Italian (it)
- Spanish (es)

On Windows hosts, the host locale is set on the Regional Settings dialog box.

On UNIX and Linux hosts, the host locale is set with the LANG environment variable.

## Data dictionary locales

Content Server stores information about object types and their attributes in the *data dictionary*. During repository configuration, a set of data dictionary information is loaded into the repository based on the server host locale. If the host locale is English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Japanese, or Korean, the data dictionary information for that locale is loaded. If the host locale is not one of the seven locales, the server defaults to loading the English data dictionary information.

You can load additional sets of data dictionary information by modifying the `data_dictionary.ini` file. Note that installing additional data dictionary information can affect server performance, and also that EMC Documentum only supports the seven languages that are shipped with Content Server. For information on loading additional data dictionary information, refer to Appendix D, “Populating and Publishing the Data Dictionary,” in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*.

## Database code page

For new repositories, install the database using the Unicode code page, which can accurately store characters from all supported languages.

- On Oracle, Sybase, and DB2, use UTF-8
- On SQL Server, you can use any *collation* (SQL Server’s name for code page), because this only determines the code page of varchar and char types.

For SQL Server repositories version 5.1 and later, Content Server uses only nvarchar and nchar types, which automatically use Unicode.

Documentum supports upgrading existing repositories that use a database code page other than UTF-8.

On Oracle and Sybase, migrating existing repositories to Unicode using the tools supplied by Oracle and Sybase is supported.

On DB2, all repositories should have been created using Unicode. They do not need to be migrated. If your DB2 repository does not use Unicode, migrate the database using IBM’s tools.

On SQL Server, migrating the database to Unicode is not supported.

## Planning for a Content Server upgrade

You can upgrade to Content Server 5.3.SP1 only from Server 5.2.5x or 5.3.

If you are running an earlier version of Content Server, you must upgrade to 5.2.5x before upgrading to 5.3 SP1. Refer to the documentation for Server 5.2.5x for information on upgrading to that Server version.

Depending on the EMC Documentum Server release from which you are upgrading, you may need to upgrade the operating system or database. For information on upgrading those components of your system, refer to the documentation provided by the operating system or database vendor.

Each step in the upgrade process must be to a platform that is fully supported by EMC Documentum. After each upgrade step, we strongly recommend testing the repository to ensure that all functions are normal.

For complete information on supported upgrade paths and the order in which you must upgrade the components of your system, refer to [Supported upgrade paths, page 58](#).

Content Server 5.3 and 5.3 SP1 use a new implementation of full-text indexing. If you are upgrading from a Content Server version earlier than 5.3, new indexes must be created before or after Content Server is upgraded. Before upgrading, ensure that you review [Preparing for a Content Server upgrade, page 57](#) and the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## Planning to upgrade a server installation

A Windows host can have only one Content Server software installation, from which you can create multiple repositories. When you upgrade the installation, you must upgrade all of the repositories in that installation.

A UNIX host can have more than one Content Server installation and you can create multiple repositories from each installation. You can upgrade each installation at a different time. When you upgrade the installation, you must upgrade all of the repositories in that installation.

## Change for Tomcat application server startup on UNIX

This section applies to your installation if you have user-defined server methods that rely on native code libraries.

When Tomcat application server is started on a UNIX platform, it now passes the following to Java:

```
-Djava.library.path=$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/dfc
```

This change means that any user-defined value in:

- LIBPATH on AIX
- SHLIB\_PATH on HP-UX
- LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH on Solaris or Linux

will not be used Tomcat for Java methods or by the ACS server. If you require that directories other than \$DOCUMENTUM\_SHARED/dfc be searched when loading native code shared libraries, it is now necessary to edit the file \$DM\_HOME/tomcat/bin/setenv.sh.





# Preparing for Content Server Installation

Use the information in this chapter to prepare the network and hosts for Content Server installation. [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#) contains additional information for preparing the database installation for Content Server. If you are configuring full-text indexing for a repository, review the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Windows host preparation, page 41](#) discusses configuring a Windows host and creating the correct user accounts for Content Server installation
- [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#) discusses configuring a UNIX host and creating the correct environment variables and user accounts for Content Server installation
- [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#)
- [Preparing for a Content Server upgrade, page 57](#) discusses special preparations that must be made before upgrading Content Server

## Windows host preparation

If you are running Content Server on a Windows host, you must make some configuration changes in Windows itself and you must ensure that the correct accounts are set up before you install the server. This section includes the following topics:

- [Setting the PATH environment variable, page 42](#)
- [Running WDK applications on the Content Server host, page 42](#)
- [Restricted characters, page 43](#)
- [Regional settings, page 43](#)
- [Authentication domains on Windows 2000, page 44](#)
- [Distributed configurations and UTC time, page 44](#)
- [Setting up the installation owner account, page 44](#)

- [Setting up the repository owner account, page 46](#)
- [Setting up repository user accounts, page 47](#)

## Setting the PATH environment variable

On Windows hosts, you must manually add the path to Java to the PATH system environment variable. If this is not set correctly, custom Java methods executed by the Java method server and the LDAP and federation jobs do not run correctly on the host.

During Content Server installation, you are asked for a DFC installation directory. This is typically *Drive:\Program Files\Documentum*. Installing DFC also installs the JDK. The full path to the Java installation is typically *Drive:\Program Files\Documentum\jdk\version\_number\bin*, and that is the value to add to the PATH system environment value.

**To modify the PATH environment variable:**

1. Right-click **My Computer**.
2. Select the **Advanced** tab.
3. Click **Environment Variables**.
4. In the **System Variables** section, select **PATH** and click **Edit**.
5. Add the value *DFC\_install\_location\java\_version\bin* to the path and click **Ok**, where *java\_version* is the Java version support for the Content Server version you are installing.  
The DFC installation location is set during server installation. It is typically *Drive:\Program Files\Documentum*.
6. Click **Ok** and close the System Properties dialog box.

## Running WDK applications on the Content Server host

EMC Documentum Web Development Kit and applications built with WDK (such as Documentum Administrator) are run with an application server. If you install WDK or a WDK application on the Content Server host, install and run the application server using an account that is not an EMC Documentum user. This creates security risks because of trusted login. For more information, refer to the *WDK and Applications Installation Guide*.

## Restricted characters

The name of the directory in which Content Server is installed must contain only ASCII characters. Additionally, do not use the following characters in path names accessed by EMC Documentum product installers:

! \ / : \* ? " < > |

Do not use spaces in the name of the product installation directory. For example, do not use c:\Documentum Products\ or /Documentum Products as the name of the installation directory.

## Regional settings

Before you install a repository, the Windows Regional Settings must be set to specify a four-digit date.

**To specify a four-digit date:**

1. Choose **Start** → **Settings** → **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click **Regional Options**.
3. Click the **Date** tab.
4. Select a date style that includes a four-digit year from the dropdown list.
5. Click **OK**.

## SMTP server on Windows

On Windows hosts, Content Server must be able to connect to an SMTP mail server. The SMTP server can be an SMTP server located on your network or it can be the SMTP server provided with Windows 2000. During the installation or upgrade procedure, you must provide the name or IP address of the computer hosting the SMTP server.

If a valid SMTP server host name is not available during installation, supply an invalid host name and the installation will finish. Do not leave the field blank. After installation, add a valid SMTP server host name to the smtp\_server attribute of the server config object. Reinitialize the server after you update the server config object.

## Authentication domains on Windows 2000

On Windows 2000, if you want to authenticate users in a domain other than the host on which Content Server is installed, the Computer Browser Service must be enabled.

**To enable the Computer Browser Service:**

1. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Administrative Tools**→**Services**.
2. Scroll to Computer Browser Service.
3. If the Computer Browser Service is not running, click **Start**.
4. Close the Services dialog box.

## Distributed configurations and UTC time

If you install a distributed configuration, ensure that all host computers in the configuration are set to the same UTC time.

## Setting up the installation owner account

The installation owner is the user whose account is used to install the Server and create a repository. The server runs under the installation owner's account. The installation owner must have an operating system account. The installation owner account must be set up before the server software is installed.

When full-text indexing is implemented, the index agent and index server must be installed using the same installation owner account as the Content Server installation owner.

The installation owner's user name must consist of letters, numbers, dashes (-) and underscores (\_). The first character must be a letter. All characters must be ASCII characters.

The installation owner's password must consist of letters, numbers, dashes, underscores, and periods.

On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.

The installation owner must have Full Control permission on the installation directory. The installation owner must also have write permission on the directory from which the installer is run.

On Windows, you can create only one server software installation on a host computer. You can create multiple repositories from the software installation.

All administrative or maintenance tasks associated with the installation or the repository can be performed by the installation owner. After a repository is created, the installation owner can create additional repository accounts with Superuser or System Administrator privileges, and those accounts can also be used for repository administration. There is one important postinstallation task that must be performed with regard to the installation owner. For more information, refer to [Enabling the Purge Audit job, page 138](#).

You can create an operating system account to use exclusively for server installation and repository maintenance. A single operating system account can be used as installation owner for multiple Documentum installations on your network.

The installation owner can have a local or domain account, provided the account is a member of the local machine's administrator group. However, the installation owner account must *not* be the same account as the Windows Administrator. The installation owner account may be a local account on the Content Server host or a domain account in the domain where Content Server is installed.

Ensure that the installation owner has an email account on the SMTP mail server.

The installation owner must have the following user rights:

- Act as part of the operating system
- Create a token object
- Increase quotas
- Log on as a service
- Log on locally
- Replace a process-level token

On a standard Windows system, these rights are automatically inherited with membership in the local Administrators group. The Setup program checks for these rights and grants them if necessary.

## The installation owner in SQL Server repositories

If SQL Server is installed in a different domain from Content Server, the Documentum installation owner must be a valid user in the remote domain.

Depending on the type of authentication SQL Server uses, the installation owner requirements are different:

- If SQL Server uses Windows authentication, the installation owner must have system administrator privileges in SQL Server.
- If SQL Server uses SQL Server or mixed authentication, the installation owner does not need system administrator privileges in SQL Server.

## Setting up the repository owner account

The repository owner is the user whose account is used to connect to the database. The repository owner owns all objects in the database. Each repository must have a unique repository owner.

The repository owner's user name must consist of letters, numbers, dashes (-) and underscores (\_). The first character must be a letter. All characters must be ASCII characters.

The repository owner's password must consist of letters, numbers, dashes, underscores, and periods.

During server installation, you can designate an existing database account for database access. If you designate an existing account to use for database access, that user becomes the repository owner.

Alternatively, the Setup program can create a database user during installation. The new user then becomes the repository owner. If the Setup program creates the database user, the database user's name defaults to the name of the repository (but you may change this during installation).

The repository owner's RDBMS user account must have the following privileges:

- Connect to the database
- Create tables, views, and indexes in the database
- Insert records (rows) into tables
- Drop tables, views, and indexes

If you allow the Content Server Setup program to create a database account for the repository owner, the proper privileges are granted to the repository owner automatically.

If you create the account before running the installer, give the account these privileges:

- On Oracle, the repository owner must have CONNECT and RESOURCE privileges.
- On DB2, GRANT use of tablespaces, list tablespace, and connect to database privileges.

On DB2, the repository owner does not have an account in DB2. The repository owner is created when you GRANT the required privileges to an existing operating system account.

- On SQL Server, the repository owner must be able to access tempdb, and if the account is created before running the installer, the user must own all tables and views.

Whether the repository owner needs a Windows account depends on the features and database you use:

- To use Microsoft Cluster Services, the repository owner must have an account in the domain in which you install the repository.
- To add users and groups to a repository, the repository owner must have an account in the same domain as the installation owner.
- To use replication, the repository owner must have an operating system or domain account.

If the repository owner does not have such an account, Content Server functions correctly except that you cannot use replication, and at Content Server startup, you see the following error message in the server log:

```
Tue Feb 28 21:23:16 2006[DM_STARTUP_I_DOCBASE_OWNER_NOT_FOUND]:
The database user (pfieldnet_dev) is not a valid NT User.
This is the user specified in your server.ini file as the database_owner
attribute. If you are running the optional Replication Services package
you will need to create a valid NT User account for this user.
```

- Under DB2, the repository owner must be a valid Windows user on the host where the database is installed.
- Under Oracle, the repository owner does not need to have an operating system account.
- If you set up the ODBC data source for SQL Server to require Windows authentication, the repository owner must have an operating system account. If you use SQL Server authentication, the repository owner is not required to have an operating system account.

In general, we recommend that you set up a Windows account for the repository owner.

## Setting up repository user accounts

Repository users are the end users in the repository. These users may own documents or other objects that are stored in a repository, but they have no particular responsibilities for the maintenance of either the repository or the installation.

On Windows, if the default user authentication is used, each user must have a Windows account in the domain where Content Server is installed. If LDAP authentication or inline password authentication is used, this is not a requirement.

## UNIX and Linux host preparation

If you are running Content Server on UNIX or Linux, you must create the installation owner's account and set variables in the installation owner's environment before you install. You must also create two groups and ensure that the shared C library is available.

This section covers these topics, which include requirements in addition to configuring the installation owner's environment correctly:

- [Running WDK applications on the Content Server host, page 48](#)
- [Restricted characters, page 48](#)
- [XWindows requirement, page 49](#)
- [Installing remotely, page 49](#)
- [Performing the root task, page 49](#)
- [The /var/tmp directory, page 50](#)
- [Setting up the installation directories, page 50](#)
- [Shared memory and semaphore requirements, page 51](#)
- [Default operating system permissions on directories and files, page 51](#)
- [Distributed configurations and UTC time, page 51](#)
- [Required Groups, page 51](#)
- [Required individual accounts, page 52](#)
- [Setting up the services file, page 55](#)

### Restricted characters

Do not use the following characters in path names accessed by Documentum product installers:

! \ / : \* ? " < > |

Do not use spaces in the name of the Documentum installation directory. For example, do not use c:\Documentum Products\ or /Documentum Products as the name of the installation directory.

## Running WDK applications on the Content Server host

EMC Documentum Web Development Kit and Documentum applications built with WDK (such as Documentum Administrator) are run with an application server. If you



install WDK or a WDK application on the Content Server host, install and run the application server using an account that is not a Documentum user.

## XWindows requirement

XWindows must be installed on the UNIX host to run the graphical installer and the xterm program must be in the Documentum installation owner's path. The xterm program may be installed in various locations depending on your operating system and software packages installed. Some typical locations are:

- On Solaris, /usr/openwin/bin
- On HP-UX and AIX, /usr/bin/X11

Verify that the xterm program is in one of the above paths or in an alternate location and add that location to the PATH variable.

You can install remotely using Exceed; however, note the restriction in the next section.

## Installing remotely

Displaying the installer remotely across platforms is not supported. For example, remotely displaying from Solaris to Solaris usually works, but Solaris to an HP XServer or Exceed is not supported.

## Performing the root task

At the end of installation you have the option of logging in as root and executing the dm\_root\_task script or allowing the installer to execute the dm\_root\_task script. This sets the correct file permissions on the dm\_check\_password and dm\_change\_password programs, which are required for user authentication. If you allow the installer to perform the task, xterm must be in the installation owner's path. If xterm is not in the installation owner's path, you must log in as the root user and run the dm\_root\_task manually after installation. For instructions on running dm\_root\_task, refer to [Running dm\\_root\\_task manually on UNIX or Linux systems, page 134](#).

## The /var/tmp directory

You must have at least 300 megabytes available in the /var/tmp directory to install Content Server.

The installation owner's account must have read, write, and execute permission on the /var/tmp directory.

## Setting up the installation directories

Before you install Documentum on a UNIX system, you must determine the directories in which Content Server will be installed and then set two environment variables in the installation owner's environment. You can create the installation directories before installing the server or you can allow the server installation program to create the directories from your input. If you allow the server installation program to create the directories, ensure that the directories you provide during installation match those in the environment variables.

The environment variables and installation directories must contain only ASCII characters. The name of the Documentum installation directory must not contain spaces.

- `$DOCUMENTUM`

This environment variable corresponds to the directory where you are installing Documentum.

The installation owner must have read, write, and execute permission on the `$DOCUMENTUM` directory and its subdirectories.

- `$DM_HOME`

This is the `$DOCUMENTUM/product/version_number` directory.

For *version\_number*, substitute the actual version of the software.

For example:

`$DOCUMENTUM/product/5.3`

If you are upgrading from Content Server 5.2.5, you must create a new `$DM_HOME` directory and reset the value of the environment variable. Create a new directory `$DOCUMENTUM/product/5.3` and set `$DM_HOME` to that directory before you start the upgrade process. If you are upgrading from Content Server 5.3, do not create a new `$DM_HOME`.

Refer to the *Content Server Release Notes* for the product version.

Refer to [Setting up the installation owner account, page 52](#) for information on defining `$DOCUMENTUM` and `$DM_HOME` in the installation owner's account.

## Default operating system permissions on directories and files

When Content Server creates directories and files in the server installation, it assigns default operating system permissions to those directories and files. The default permissions assigned to directories are 777 and the default permissions assigned to files are 666. You can change the defaults assigned to public directories and files by setting the umask key in the server.ini file. Setting umask affects all public directories and files created *after* the key is set.

The umask key works similarly to the UNIX umask functionality. The value is subtracted from the default permissions to determine the actual permissions assigned to a file or directory. For example, if you set umask=2, then the default permissions assigned to directories becomes 775 and the default permissions for files becomes 662. Or, if you set umask=20, then the permissions become 757 for directories and 626 for files.

If you want to change the default permissions for all files and directories, you must modify the server.ini file before Content Server starts. Choose **Custom repository configuration**, then modify the server.ini file by adding the umask key and a value.

## Distributed configurations and UTC time

If you install a distributed configuration, ensure that all host computers in the configuration are set to the same UTC time.

## Shared memory and semaphore requirements

Content Server's shared memory and semaphore requirements are as follows:

- Configure the host with at least two megabytes of shared memory for Content Server.
- Content Server uses a semaphore.

Ensure that semaphores are enabled on the host.

## Required Groups

This section describes the UNIX groups necessary to install Content Server.

On UNIX and Linux, every Content Server installation must have group and user accounts for the installation owner, repository owner, and repository users. The

installation owner group and individual accounts must be set up before the Content Server software is installed. The repository owner (database user) account may be set up in the database before the software is installed or during repository configuration. Repository users are created after the repository is created.

## The installation owner group

To support external password validation, set up a group account whose members are the installation owner, any other Content Server administrators, and repository owners. This will be the group that owns the external password validation program.

## Required individual accounts

Every Content Server installation must have an installation owner and each repository must have a repository owner. Each repository has repository users.

The individual responsibilities of the installation owner, repository owner, and repositories users are described in the following sections.

## Setting up the installation owner account

The installation owner is the user whose account is used to install the Server and create a repository. The server runs under the installation owner's account. The installation owner account must be set up before the server software is installed.

When full-text indexing is implemented, install the index agent and index server as the same user as the Content Server installation owner.

The installation owner must have an operating system account. The installation owner's user name must consist of letters, numbers, dashes (-) and underscores (\_). The first character must be a letter. All characters must be ASCII characters.

The installation owner's password must consist of letters, numbers, dashes, underscores, and periods.

The installation owner's account must have read, write, and execute permission on the /var/tmp directory and on the installation directory (\$DOCUMENTUM and its subdirectories). The installation owner must also have write permission on the directory from which the installer is run.

Do not use the root account as the installation owner account.

All administrative or maintenance tasks associated with the installation or the repository can be performed by the installation owner. After a repository is created, the installation owner can create additional repository accounts with Superuser or System Administrator privileges, and those accounts can also be used for repository administration. There is one important postinstallation task that must be performed with regard to the installation owner. For more information, refer to [Enabling the Purge Audit job, page 138](#).

You can create an operating system account to use exclusively for server installation and repository maintenance. A single user account can be used as installation owner for multiple Documentum installations on your network.

On UNIX and Linux, you can create multiple server installations on a single host computer. You can have separate installation owners for each installation or you can use separate environment files to enable a single installation owner to own all of the installations.

Ensure that the installation owner has an email account on the SMTP mail server.

The server configuration program is started with the `dm_launch_server_config_program.sh` script, which adds required values to the following environment variables:

- PATH
- CLASSPATH
- JAVA\_HOME
- On Solaris and Linux, LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH
- On HP-UX, SHLIB\_PATH
- On AIX, LIBPATH

The script also sets required database environment variables.

If you do not use the `dm_launch_server_config_program.sh` script, you must manually set the environment variables below and the environment variables discussed in [Appendix B, Required Environment Variables on UNIX and Linux Hosts](#).

The following table details the environment variables that you must set manually in the installation owner's environment before you install Content Server:

**Table 3-1. Required environment variables**

Environment Variable	Description	Required Values
DOCUMENTUM	The directory in which Content Server is installed	Any directory in the installation owner's environment
DM_HOME	The directory that contains the link to the directory containing the executables.	<code>\$DOCUMENTUM/product/version_number</code>

Environment Variable	Description	Required Values
DOCUMENTUM_SHARED	The directory in which DFC is installed	Any directory in the installation owner's environment
DISPLAY	Controls the display	localhost:0.0
LC_ALL		C

Set these variables in the installation owner's .cshrc file (C shell) or .profile file (Bourne or Korn shells). Alternatively, set the variables in a file called by the .cshrc file or .profile file or in other fashions permitted by UNIX.

You must also set any environment variables required by the database. For information on these environment variables, refer to [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#) and to the documentation for your RDBMS.

## Setting up the repository owner account

The repository owner is the user whose account is used to connect to the database. The repository owner owns all objects in the database. Each repository must have a unique repository owner.

The repository owner's user name must consist of letters, numbers, dashes (-) and underscores (\_). The first character must be a letter. All characters must be ASCII characters.

The repository owner's password must consist of letters, numbers, dashes, underscores, and periods.

During server installation, you can designate an existing database account for database access. If you designate an existing account to use for database access, that user becomes the repository owner.

Alternatively, the Setup program can create a database user during installation. The new user then becomes the repository owner. If the Setup program creates the database user, the database user's name defaults to the name of the repository.

The repository owner's RDBMS user account must have the following privileges:

- Connect to the database
- Create tables, views, and indexes in the database
- Insert records (rows) into tables
- Drop tables, views, and indexes
- On Oracle, unlimited tablespace

If you allow the Content Server installation program to create a database account for the repository owner, the proper privileges are granted to the repository owner automatically.

If you are creating the account before you run the installer, give the following privileges to the account:

- On Oracle, CONNECT and RESOURCE privileges
- On Sybase, the database owner must be the repository owner (Documentum database user)
- On DB2, GRANT use of tablespaces, list tablespace, and connect to database

On DB2, the repository owner must have an operating system account.

To use replication, the repository owner must have an operating system account. If the repository owner does not have such an account, Content Server functions correctly except that you cannot use replication, and at Content Server startup, you see the following error message in the server log:

```
Tue Feb 28 21:23:16 2006[DM_STARTUP_I_DOCBASE_OWNER_NOT_FOUND]:
The database user (pfieldnet_dev) is not a valid NT User.
This is the user specified in your server.ini file as the database_owner
attribute. If you are running the optional Replication Services package
you will need to create a valid NT User account for this user.
```

## Repository users

Repository users are the end users in the repository. These users may own documents or other objects that are stored in a repository, but they have no particular responsibilities for the maintenance of either the repository or the installation.

On UNIX and Linux, end users who want to execute a program whose executable is found in \$DM\_HOME/bin must have \$DM\_HOME/bin in their path. For example, application developers who are writing and testing Docbasic procedures need to have \$DM\_HOME/bin in their paths.

## Setting up the services file

The services file contains information on the port numbers used by the services or processes running on a host. The services file must contain two entries for each repository running on a host. On UNIX and Linux, you must manually create the service name entries in the services file before you install the server.

The service name entries are made in the /etc/services file or NIS services map for each repository running on the host. You must have root privileges to edit the /etc/services file.

The repository does not have default service names or default port numbers. The service name you put in the services file must be the same name you provide during repository configuration, which is then used to create the server.ini file. The service name for the repository can be the same as the repository name, but this is not required.

The services file must include entries designating two consecutive port numbers for use by Content Server, one for native connections and one for secure (SSL) connections. You must append `_s` to the name of the repository service for the secure connections. Repository service names ending with `_s` are reserved for secure connections.

Create the service name entries using the following format:

```
service_name port_number/tcp #Comment here,if desired
service_name_s port_number/tcp #Comment here,if desired
```

If NIS is running, the local services file (/etc/services) is ignored. Place the entries in the NIS services map. Use the `ypwhich` command to identify the hostname of the NIS master server, if there is one.

The port numbers can be any unused port numbers greater than 1024 (UNIX reserves port numbers up to 1024 for system use). For example, if the repository service were named `lime`, the services file entries might be:

```
lime 1497/tcp # 5.3 Repository native connection
lime_s 1498/tcp # 5.3 Repository secure connection
```

If the correct services file entries are not present, the installer stops.

If you have multiple repositories on a single machine, create a services file entry for each repository, ensuring that the repositories have different names and port numbers.

## Preparing for the global registry

During repository configuration, you are asked to make the following choice:

- Use the current repository as a global registry

You must then provide the user login name and password for the global registry user in the current repository (the repository you are currently configuring). Record that information and provide the user login name and password to any DFC instance requiring access to this global registry repository. The DFC instance on the current host is also configured to access this global registry.

- Specify a different repository as a global registry

You must provide the repository name, and the login credentials (user login name and password) of the global registry user in that repository. The DFC instance on the current host is configured to access the remote global registry repository.

- Do later



If you choose this option, you can delete the `dfc.bof.registry.repository`, `dfc.bof.registry.username`, and `dfc.bof.registry.password` from the `dfc.properties` file and re-run the DFC installer on this host in order to designate the global registry repository at a later time.

Whether or not you designate the repository as a global registry, the global registry user is created in the repository.

The global registry user, who has the user name of `dm_bof_registry`, is the repository user whose account is used by DFC clients to connect to the repository to access required service-based objects or network locations stored in the global registry. This user has Read access to objects in the `/System/Modules` and `/System/NetworkLocations` only, and no other objects.

This user is created in all repositories, regardless of whether the repository is configured as a global registry:

- If you configure the repository as a global registry, you provide the user login name and password for the user and the user state is set to Active.

This can be any arbitrary user login name and password. Record the user login name and password, and provide the user login name and password during DFC installation on client hosts. Do not use the repository owner's credentials or the installation owner's credentials.

- If you do not configure the repository as a global registry, the user is created with a default value for the user login name and the user state is set to Inactive.

If you later enable the repository as a global registry, use Documentum Administrator to change the user state to Active and provide the user with a user login name and password that you choose. Refer to [Enabling a repository as a global registry, page 132](#) for instructions on enabling the repository as a global registry.

## Preparing for a Content Server upgrade

This section discusses preparations for a server upgrade on both Windows, UNIX, and Linux. This section contains information on the following topics:

- [Supported upgrade paths, page 58](#)
- [Upgrading full-text indexes, page 60](#)
- [Backing up the repository, page 60](#)
- [Backing up formats, page 60](#)
- [Upgrading distributed configurations, page 60](#)
- [Apache Tomcat and the Java Method Server, page 61](#)
- [Documentum Foundation Classes on Windows hosts, page 62](#)

- [Documentum Foundation Classes on UNIX and Linux hosts, page 62](#)
- [Migrating the database to UTF-8, page 62](#)
- [Running the consistency checker, page 63](#)
- [Upgrading older repositories, page 63](#)
- [The database\\_refresh\\_interval key, page 64](#)
- [Creating a repository copy to test an upgrade, page 64](#)

## Supported upgrade paths

This section contains information on the upgrade paths supported by Documentum and the order in which you must upgrade the components of your system. On all platforms, you can upgrade to Content Server 5.3 SP1 only from Content Server 5.2.5, including 5.2.5 Service Pack releases, or Content Server 5.3. Review the release notes for Content Server 5.3 SP1 for complete information on supported operating system and database platforms.

For additional planning information, refer to [Planning for a Content Server upgrade, page 38](#).

### Windows with Oracle

If you are on Windows with Oracle 9.2, you can upgrade Content Server directly, and then optionally upgrade to Oracle 10g. If you are on Oracle 8.1.7, you must upgrade Oracle to 9.2 before upgrading the server.

### Windows with SQL Server

If you are on Windows with SQL Server, you can upgrade Content Server directly.

### Windows with DB2

If you are on Windows with DB2 8.1, you can upgrade Content Server directly. If you are on DB2 7.2, you must upgrade DB2 to 8.1, then upgrade Content Server.

## Solaris with Oracle

If you are on Solaris with Oracle 9.2, you can upgrade Content Server directly, and then optionally upgrade to Oracle 10g. If you are on Oracle 8.1.7, you must upgrade Oracle to 9.2 before upgrading the server.

## Solaris with Sybase

If you are on Solaris with Sybase, you can upgrade Content Server directly.

## AIX with Oracle

If you are on AIX with Oracle 9.2, you can upgrade Content Server directly, and then optionally upgrade to Oracle 10g. If you are on Oracle 8.1.7, you must upgrade Oracle to 9.2 before upgrading the server.

If you are on AIX 5.1, you must upgrade to AIX 5.2 before upgrading to Content Server 5.3 SP1.

## AIX with DB2

If you are on AIX 5.2 with DB2 8.1, you can upgrade Content Server directly. If you are on AIX 5.1 or DB2 7.2, you must upgrade AIX to 5.2 and DB2 to 8.1, then upgrade Content Server.

If you are on Content Server 5.2.5 or any 5.2.5 Service Pack version of the server and the database is DB2 8.1.5, use the following upgrade order:

1. Upgrade Content Server to 5.3 SP1.
2. Upgrade DB2 to version 8.1 FixPak 7a.

## HP-UX with Oracle

If you are on HP-UX with Oracle 8.1.7, you must first upgrade Oracle to 9.2, then upgrade Content Server to 5.3 SP1. You can then optionally upgrade to Oracle 10g.

## Upgrading full-text indexes

Content Server 5.3 SP1 has a new implementation of full-text indexing. Existing Verity indexes do not work with Content Server 5.3 and later and must be replaced before or after upgrading Content Server with new indexes. For complete information on planning for and creating new full-text indexes, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## Backing up the repository

Before upgrading a repository, back it up. Several third-party tools are available for creating repository backups. Please note that Documentum Technical Support does not provide assistance with backups.

## Backing up formats

repository formats (dm\_format objects) are upgraded by the dm\_apply\_formats.ebs script, which reads values from the formats.csv file. If the attributes of a format in the repository do not match the format descriptions in the formats.csv file, the script overwrites the existing values with the values in the file.



**Caution:** If your repository contains customized formats, back up the customizations before you upgrade the repository.

## Upgrading distributed configurations

Use these guidelines in deciding how to upgrade a distributed configuration.

- Repository federations

Documentum supports federations that contain repositories of different versions. In this release, any mix of 5.1 and later repositories may be federation members. If you are upgrading the repositories in a federation, upgrade the governing repository first.

If the governing repository is a 5.3 or 5.3 SP1 repository, keep in mind the following caveats:

- Prior releases do not support dynamic groups. Consequently, any dynamic groups defined in the governing repository are propagated to any pre-5.3 members as standard, non-dynamic groups.

- Similarly, prior releases do not support access restricting (AccessRestriction, ExtentendRestriction) entries in ACLs. If the federation's federation mode is replicating ACLs with those kinds of entries to pre-5.3 member repositories, the entries are ignored by pre-5.3 Content Servers.
- The restricted\_folder\_ids attribute for users (introduced in release 5.3) is a local attribute. This means that any restricted users in the governing repository are propagated as unrestricted users in the member repositories. (If the member is a 5.3 or 5.3 SP1 repository, you can set that attribute locally if desired.)
- Repositories with distributed content
 

Shut down the primary server and all content file servers. Upgrade the primary server first, then upgrade the content-file servers.

The new cfsConfig program, which is used for creating remote Content Servers, cannot be used to upgrade pre-5.3 SP1 content-file servers. Refer to [Upgrading a distributed configuration, page 120](#) for instructions on upgrading content-file servers to 5.3 SP1.
- Repositories with object replication
 

Upgrade the source repository, then the target repositories. If you have a group of repositories where each repository is both a source and a target – for example, objects are replicated repository A to repository B, repository B to repository C, and repository C to repository A – then upgrading can begin with any of the repositories.

You can run replication between repositories that use different server versions, but you lose attributes that are in the newer version, since they cannot be replicated to a version that does not contain them. Content Server 5.3 SP1 supports replication among server versions 5.1 and later only.

If you are upgrading a distributed configuration on Windows, do not reboot the remote hosts using Terminal Services. Reboot the remote hosts directly from those hosts.

## Apache Tomcat and the Java Method Server

Apache Tomcat, installed with Content Server, is required by EMC Documentum Content Server. It supports a variety of features and licenses in the server. Use of an alternative application server, instead of Apache Tomcat, is not supported.

Content Server can optionally use Apache Tomcat for running Java methods.

When you upgrade Content Server, if there is already a Tomcat instance or another application server on the server host, stop the application server before you start the upgrade. If you are installing a new Content Server, the Java method server is installed by default. It requires two ports.

The installed Tomcat instance is used by the Java method server and the ACS server. Do not use the installed Tomcat instance for any other purpose, including running Documentum WDK applications or Documentum Business Process Services.

## Documentum Foundation Classes on Windows hosts

The Documentum Foundation Classes are upgraded in place on Windows hosts.

On Windows, you have the option of installing a Microsoft installer package for the DFC primary interop assembly. Refer to the DFC release notes for more information on the PIA.

## Documentum Foundation Classes on UNIX and Linux hosts

On UNIX and Linux hosts, if you are upgrading from Content Server 5.2.5, including Service Pack releases, create new directories for DFC 5.3 SP1 and ensure that the DFC environment variables point to these directories. If you are upgrading from Content Server 5.3, you do not need to create a new DFC directory. For more information, refer to the DFC release notes and [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#).

## Migrating the database to UTF-8

If your database was installed with a code page other than UTF-8 under a previous Content Server version, you do not have to migrate the database to UTF-8 in order to upgrade your Content Server version. However, to use Content Server's multilingual functions, you must migrate the database to UTF-8.

For upgrades, Documentum supports upgrading repositories using the existing database code page.

On Oracle and Sybase, you can migrate existing repositories to Unicode using the tools supplied by Oracle and Sybase. Contact Oracle or Sybase for any support you require in migrating the database.

On DB2, all repositories should have been created using Unicode. They do not need to be migrated. If your DB2 repository does not use Unicode, migrate the database using IBM's tools. Contact IBM for any support you require.

On SQL Server, you cannot migrate the database to Unicode.

## Running the consistency checker

Before you upgrade, run the repository consistency checker on each existing repository. The consistency checker is a script that looks for repository inconsistencies, such as users with nonexistent groups, permissions sets with nonexistent users, and sysobjects that point to nonexistent content files. Fixing inconsistencies in the repository improves the quality of the data in the repository and results in a smoother upgrade.

The consistency checker is packaged with the server installation files. After you uncompress the server distribution file, the consistency checker script is in the same directory as the other installation files. The file is called `consistency_checker.ebs`.

After you run the consistency checker, fix any inconsistencies reported as ERROR.

### To run the consistency checker:

1. Uncompress the server distribution file.
2. Run the consistency checker:

```
dmbasic -fconsistency_checker.ebs -eEntry_Point --
repository_name superuser password
```

where *repository\_name* is the name of the repository against which you are running the consistency checker, *superuser* is the user name of a repository superuser, and *password* is the password for the superuser's account.

The results of the consistency checker are directed to standard output.

3. Fix the inconsistencies reported by the consistency checker as ERRORS.

For complete information on the consistency checker, refer to the Appendix entitled Consistency Checks in the *Documentum Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Upgrading older repositories

If a repository was originally created prior to version 4.0 (and has consequently been upgraded from the pre-4.0 server version), the database tables contain columns called *column\_name\_id\_i* (for example, *r\_object\_id\_i*). These columns correspond to attributes that are not used by Content Server. By design, the upgrade to version 4.0.x did not remove the columns, which remain in the database tables. Do not register these tables and do not create applications that directly access the columns.

## The database\_refresh\_interval key

During server installation or upgrade, the change checker process runs once per minute by default. The process updates type caches as types are created or altered. Before you upgrade, ensure that the key is set to 1 minute or remove it from the server.ini file.

## Creating a repository copy to test an upgrade

Before upgrading a repository, create an environment in which to test the upgrade process. To do this, create a new installation using the original server software version, copy the repository, and upgrade that copy. After the upgraded copy is tested, upgrade the original repository.

Use the instructions for creating a repository copy on the same platform as the original repository. The procedure is not supported for moving a repository from one platform to another.

It is not required that you copy the content files from the production repository to the repository copy. However, if you want to test operations involving the content files, you must copy the content files to the repository copy.

You cannot create copies of more than one repository in a single new installation if the repositories were created in different installations.

If you are creating a repository copy to test the upgrade, and the production and copy repositories have the same database owner password, you must copy the dbpasswd.txt file from the production repository installation to the repository copy installation or the copy repository will not start.

For example, if you are copying two repositories, Paris and London, that were created in separate server installations, you must copy them to separate server installations. Creating a repository copy requires you to copy the aek.key file from the original repository host to the repository copy host, because each repository copy must have access to the aek.key file from its original installation. You cannot have more than one aek.key file in an installation.

If you are copying two repositories, Tokyo and Beijing, that were created in the same server installation, you can create their copies in the same new installation, with the aek.key file from the original installation copied to the installation where you create the copies.

Before you create the repository copy, complete these tasks:



**Table 3-2. Precopying tasks**

Task	For More Information	Your Value/Completed?
Decide whether to copy the content files		
Obtain the repository name	Consult the repository administrator	
Obtain the repository ID from the server.ini file	Consult the repository administrator	
Obtain the repository owner's name and password	Consult the repository administrator	
Create a database instance separate from the database instance used by the production repository	Consult the DBA.	
Obtain connection information for the alternative database instance	The DBA and documentation for the database	
Identify a target host computer on which to create the repository copy		
Obtain the system or administrator user name and password for the database	Consult the DBA.	
Note the drive on which the production repository resides.		
Decide whether to create the copy on the equivalent drive.		
You must decide whether to create the copy on a drive equivalent to the drive on which the production repository resides. If the copy is on a different drive (for example, on drive D: rather than drive E:), there are additional steps you must perform.		
After you have completed the tasks in Table 5-1, above, create the repository copy. The instructions below are high-level instructions, but they include crucial steps. To create the repository that becomes the copy, refer to <i>Content Server Installation Guide</i> for server 5.2.5 for complete installation instructions and to this manual for instructions on how to upgrade the copy to 5.3 SP1.		

In the following instructions, the test repository is called the repository copy. Your original repository is called the production repository.



**Caution:** The instructions assume that the production repository is running and on the network while the repository copy is tested. However, it is strongly recommended that you shut down the production repository or take it off the network while you test the repository copy. Conflicts and data corruption can result from having two repositories on the network with the same name and repository ID.

**To copy a repository:**

1. Shut down the production repository.
2. On the target host, create a new server installation and repository (the repository copy) of the same version number as the production repository.

Follow the instructions in the *Content Server Installation Guide* for the server version from which you are upgrading.

- When you create the repository copy, ensure that you use the *same* repository name, repository ID, and repository owner name and password as the production repository.
- You cannot create copies of more than one repository in a single new installation if the repositories were created in different installations.

For example, if you are copying two repositories, Paris and London, that were created in separate server installations, you must copy them to separate server installations. Creating a repository copy requires you to copy the aek.key file from the original repository host to the repository copy host, because each repository copy must have access to the aek.key file from its original installation. You cannot have more than one aek.key file in an installation.

If you are copying two repositories, Tokyo and Beijing, that were created in the same server installation, you can create their copies in the same new installation, with the aek.key file from the original installation copied to the installation where you create the copies.

- Ensure that you use a *different* database instance from the instance used by the production repository and that you provide the correct connection information when you install.

For example, under Oracle the tnsnames.ora on the host where the repository copy resides must point to the Oracle instance used by the copy, not the instance used by the production repository.

- Ensure that the repository copy projects to a connection broker different from the connection broker used by the production repository.
  - Copy the \$DOCUMENTUM/dba/secure/aek.key file from the original host to the same location on the repository copy host.
3. Apply to the repository copy any patches you applied to the production repository.

4. Connect to the database instance serving the production repository.
5. Using the database vendor's tools, export all objects owned by the repository owner and export the schema for the tables comprising the repository.  
Contact the database vendor for technical support you require to use the database tools.
6. On the production repository host's file system, create a backup of the entire `$DOCUMENTUM/data/repository_name` directory.  
This is the directory containing the repository's content files.
7. Stop the repository copy.
8. Connect as the database system administrator to the database instance serving the repository copy.  
For example, on Oracle, connect as the System account.
9. Destroy the existing tablespaces or database using the `dm_DeleteTableSpace.sql` script in `$DOCUMENTUM/dba/config/repository_name/`.  
The scripts are database-specific. Run the script using the tools provided by your database vendor.
10. Remove the physical database file from the file system.  
The name and location of the physical file are in the `dm_CreateTableSpace.sql` script.
11. Create new tablespaces or databases for the repository copy using the `dm_CreateTableSpace.sql` script in `$DOCUMENTUM/dba/config/repository_name/`.  
The scripts are database-specific. Run the script using the tools provided by your database vendor.
12. Import the database export taken from the production repository into the newly-created tablespaces or database.
13. Verify that the database tables have the correct value for the test system host name by checking the following values:
  - `r_host_name` in `dm_server_config_s`
  - `host_name` in `dm_mount_point_s`
  - `target_server` in `dm_job_s`
  - `projection_targets` in `dm_server_config_r`
14. Connect to the database serving the repository copy as the repository owner .
15. If any of the values in [Step 13](#) are incorrect, use SQL to correct the values.
16. Set the server to rebuild the Documentum views with this SQL statement:
 

```
update dm_type_s set views_valid=0
```
17. If you are testing operations that require the content files, copy the content file backup from the production repository to the file system of the repository copy.

18. Navigate to the `DOCUMENTUM/dba/config/repository_name` directory and open the `server.ini` file in a text editor.
19. Ensure that the `preserve_existing_types` key in the `SERVER_STARTUP` section is set to `TRUE`:  

```
preserve_existing_types=T
```
20. Save the `server.ini` file.
21. Start the server for the repository copy.
22. If you are testing the migration of a Web content management repository, modify the user objects to reflect the new authentication domain.
  - a. Start IDQL and connect to the repository as the installation owner.
  - b. Issue the following commands:  

```
update dm_user objects
set user_os_domain = 'new_machine_name'
where user_os_domain = 'old_machine_name'
```
  - c. Disconnect from the repository and close IDQL.
23. If the server and content files of the copy reside on a drive different from the drive used by the production repository (for example, drive D: instead of drive E:), use IDQL to update the `file_system_path` attribute of the `dm_location` and `dm_mount_point` objects to the new location:  

```
update dm_location objects
set file_system_path='newpath' where file_system_path='old path'
update dm_mount_point objects
set file_system_path='newpath' where file_system_path='old path'
```
24. Deactivate all jobs by changing the `is_inactive` attribute on all job objects to `TRUE`.
25. Upgrade the repository copy to Content Server 5.2 and verify the upgrade.

# Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation

Each repository must have a properly-configured database. This chapter contains information on configuring the database properly. It contains these topics:

- [Requirements for all databases, page 69](#)
- [System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2, page 72](#)
- [Oracle requirements, page 73](#)
- [SQL Server requirements, page 75](#)
- [Sybase requirements, page 78](#)
- [DB2 requirements, page 81](#)

Please note that instructions on installing and configuring databases for use with Content Server are provided for your convenience. Documentum does not provide support for the database. Contact the database vendors for database support.

## Requirements for all databases

Documentum Content Server requires a properly configured database. The database tables store attribute values for each object in the repository.

This section discusses those requirements and decisions that apply to all database vendors. It contains the following sections:

- [Local or remote database installation, page 70](#)
- [Database code page, page 70](#)
- [English and localized version of the database, page 70](#)
- [Database service on Windows, page 70](#)
- [Repository size, page 71](#)
- [Remote Content Servers and the database\\_conn key in the server.ini file, page 71](#)

- [Database client and remote Content Servers, page 71](#)
- [Repository owner account, page 71](#)
- [Database administrator account, page 72](#)

## Local or remote database installation

The database can be either a remote or local installation, installed on any operating system supported by the database vendor. For example, Content Server can be installed on a Windows host and use a database installed on a Solaris host.

- For remote database installations, verify that you can connect to the database by using a database client from the system where you intend to install Content Server.
- For local database installations on a UNIX host, verify that the system path includes the installation directory for the database. (On Windows hosts, the installer updates the system path automatically.)

## Database code page

If you are creating a new database or tablespace for Content Server, designate UTF-8 as the code page.

If you are upgrading Content Server you do not have to migrate the database to UTF-8; however, to use Content Server's multilingual features in an upgraded repository, you must also migrate the database to UTF-8.

## English and localized version of the database

English version and the localized Japanese and Korean versions of SQL Server and Oracle are supported.

## Database service on Windows

If Content Server and the database are located on the same Windows host, ensure that the database service is set to start automatically. Server installation sometimes requires a restart of the computer. After the restart, installation does not proceed correctly unless the database starts automatically.

## Repository size

You can configure a small, medium, or large repository. The sections of this chapter for each RDBMS discuss the differences among the repository sizes.

## Remote Content Servers and the database\_conn key in the server.ini file

When a remote Content Server is created for a distributed content environment, the server.ini file from the primary Content Server host is copied from the primary host to the remote host. The values used on the primary and remote hosts for database connectivity must be identical to ensure that the database\_conn key on the primary Content Server host is valid on the remote hosts. For example, if the database is SQL Server, ensure that the DSN name for the SQL Server instance's ODBC data source is the same on all hosts.

## Database client and remote Content Servers

The database client must be installed on hosts where remote Content Servers are installed. The remote Content Server configuration program must connect to the database to create the server config object, acs config object, file store storage object, and location objects for the remote server.

## Repository owner account

The repository owner (database user) account is the account used by Content Server to connect to the RDBMS. The server runs as the installation owner, but a separate account must exist to provide the server with access to the database tables underlying the repository. Each repository must have a unique repository owner and each repository owner must have a unique RDBMS account.

You can create the repository owner account and the database or tablespace that the repository uses before Content Server installation, or the server installation software can create the account and database or tablespace. Before you begin installation, decide whether to create the account yourself or allow the installation program to create the account.

The account must have the appropriate privileges to perform the following tasks:

- Connect to the database

- Create tables, views, and indexes in the database
- Insert records (rows) into the tables
- Drop tables, views, and indexes

The names of the privileges depend on the RDBMS.

For example, in Oracle, granting CONNECT and RESOURCE privileges to the accounts gives them the required capabilities.

For complete information on the repository owner, refer to [Windows host preparation, page 41](#) and [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#).

## Database administrator account

Regardless of the database you use with Content Server, you must know the database administrator's user name and password. This information is needed to create the repository owner account in the database if you choose to have the server installation software create the account for you.

## System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2

To improve performance and increase the throughput of the system, you may want to control where the RDBMS stores repository information. For example, you can store frequently used data and less frequently used data on different disks. Defining database parameters to store data in different tablespaces also partitions data into smaller, more manageable pieces.

To modify the database parameters, choose custom configuration and edit the server.ini file to change the default database configuration parameters. You can only change this at the time the repository is created. You cannot modify this after repository creation or during an upgrade.

You can install and run Content Server without making any changes to the default database configuration parameters. However, if you want to change the database configuration parameters, you must do so *before* you start Content Server. Refer to [Appendix F, Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables](#) for full information on changing the database configuration parameters.



# Oracle requirements

The Oracle RDBMS must meet the following requirements:

- Create the repository's database with the UTF-8 code page. This is not a requirement for upgrading Content Server.

On Oracle 9i, when you create the database and choose the database character set (code page), select Unicode (AL32UTF8). If you choose to migrate an existing database to UTF-8, use AL32UTF8.

- On UNIX and Linux, ensure that the correct Documentum environment variables are set in the installation owner's environment.

For information on these variables, refer to [Setting up the installation directories, page 50](#) and [Setting up the installation owner account, page 52](#).

- On UNIX and Linux, ensure that the ORACLE\_HOME environment variable is set in the installation owner's environment.
- On UNIX and Linux, ensure that the TNS\_ADMIN environment variable is set in the installation owner's environment.

This environment variable points to the location of the tnsnames.ora file. The Content Server installation program looks first for TNS\_ADMIN, then for ORACLE\_HOME, in order to locate the tnsnames.ora file.

- Ensure that SQL\*Plus is installed on the Content Server host.

SQL\*Plus is needed for creating tablespaces and the database user (repository owner) account.

- Ensure that client side of SQL\*Net is set up properly.

The database aliases must be in the tnsnames.ora file and the tnsnames.ora files must be configured on the Content Server host. Use the SQL\*Net configure tool to alter values in the tnsnames.ora file. You can edit the tnsnames.ora file using the SQL\*Net icon in the Oracle group.

- Install the Oracle client software on the Content Server host.

Use the Oracle 9 or 10 client software.

- The Oracle Listener process must be running on the machine where the Oracle database resides.
- Verify that you can connect to the Oracle RDBMS by using SQL\*Plus from the system where you intend to install Content Server.
- Do not install Oracle HTTP Server and Documentum RightSite® on the same host computer.

Documentum does not provide support for Oracle. If you need assistance in setting up Oracle, contact your database administrator or Oracle.

## Oracle optimization

In the init.ora file or spfile, use the following settings:

```
optimizer_index_cost_adj=5  
optimizer_index_caching=95
```

To improve performance when upgrading large repositories for Content Servers running with Oracle, ensure that the optimizer mode (optimizer\_mode in the init.ora file) is *not* set to ALL\_ROWS.

## Oracle database aliases

Oracle database aliases (TNS aliases) are defined by entries in the tnsnames.ora file. You cannot connect to an Oracle database without an alias. Use the Oracle SQL\*Net configuration tool to create a database alias referring to the database instance you plan to use for Content Server. After you create the alias, test the alias by connecting to Oracle with SQL\*Plus.

## Entries in tnsnames.ora file

Entries in the tnsnames.ora file for the Oracle HTTP service and data expo service do not contain parameters for HOST, SID, and SERVICE. If the first entry in the tnsnames.ora file is for one of these services, the Content Server installation program is unable to parse the tnsnames.ora file and cannot connect to the database. To work around this problem, the first entry in the tnsnames.ora file must not be for the Oracle HTTP service or data expo service.

The database\_conn key in the server.ini file must match exactly the database entry in the tnsnames.ora file. If it does not, you see this error:

```
Error - Failed to obtain database connection information  
corresponding to the repository from the server.ini file.  
String index out of range: -1  
Please read error log /tmp/installation_owner_name.ServerInstaller.log  
for more information.
```

If you see this error, modify the database\_conn key in the server.ini file and continue with the installation or upgrade.

## Oracle repository sizes

In a small repository on Oracle, a single tablespace contains the data and indexes and an index tablespace cannot be configured. A small Oracle repository has an initial data file size of 100 MB.

In a medium or large repository on Oracle, one tablespace contains the data and another tablespace contains the indexes, and an index tablespace can be configured. A medium Oracle repository has an initial data file size of 180 MB and an initial index file size of 180 MB. A large Oracle repository has an initial data file size of 250 MB and an initial index file size of 250 MB.

## SQL Server requirements

If you are using SQL Server, ensure that ODBC is properly configured. Refer to [Configuring an ODBC Data Source for SQL Server, page 76](#) for more information.

Use a full SQL Server installation on the host where SQL Server is installed. The SQL Server client must be installed on the Content Server host, whether the database is local or remote.

Use the Custom installation option so that you can set the database code page, case-sensitivity, and other options.

If you create the repository owner account before starting the Content Server installation program, ensure that the repository owner owns all SQL Server tables and views.

If SQL Server is installed in a different domain from Content Server, the Documentum installation owner must be a valid user in the remote domain.

Depending on the type of authentication SQL Server uses, the installation owner requirements are different:

- If SQL Server uses Windows authentication, the installation owner must have system administrator privileges in SQL Server.
- If SQL Server uses SQL Server or mixed authentication, the installation owner does not need system administrator privileges.

If SQL Server is installed on a machine remote from the machine where Content Server is installed, you must install Microsoft Data Access Components 2.71 on the Content Server host. (This is the version of MDAC provided with SQL Server 2000, SP3.)



**Caution:** The database must be installed in case-sensitive mode with row-level locking enabled. If you installed SQL Server in case-insensitive mode, you must reconfigure the database before you install or upgrade Documentum.

You must install SQL Server correctly in order to use Content Server's internationalization features. Refer to [Configuring SQL Server for Internationalization, page 76,](#) below, for instructions.

Documentum does not provide support for SQL Server. If you need assistance in setting up SQL Server, contact your database administrator or Microsoft.

## Configuring SQL Server for Internationalization

On SQL Server, you can use any *collation* (SQL Server's name for code page), because this only determines the code page of varchar and char types. For new SQL Server repositories, Content Server uses only nvarchar and nchar types, which automatically use Unicode. If you need to determine the collation settings of an existing SQL Server database, use the system stored procedure `sp_helpsort` or view the properties of the particular database in Enterprise Manager.

## Configuring SQL Server Case Sensitivity

SQL Server must be installed with the case-sensitivity option turned on. The default installation setting is case-insensitive. The Content Server Setup program detects case-sensitivity during the installation and notifies you if SQL Server is configured with the case-insensitive default.

## Configuring an ODBC Data Source for SQL Server

To install Content Server, you must configure SQL Server correctly. SQL Server requires you to add a DSN entry manually.

If you have two SQL Server instances on the same host, you must enter *hostname/instancename*, not only *hostname*, when you provide the SQL Server name.

### To configure an ODBC data source for a new installation of SQL Server:

1. Log in to Windows using an account that has Administrator privileges.
2. Choose **Start**→**Programs**→**Administrative Tools**→**ODBC**.  
The **ODBC Data Source Administrator** is displayed.
3. Choose the **System DSN** tab.
4. Click **Add**

- The **Create New Data Source** dialog box is displayed.
5. Select SQL Server and click **Finish**.  
The **Create a New Data Source to SQL Server** dialog box is displayed.
  6. Type the name of the new data source, choose the SQL Server instance you want to connect to, and optionally provide a description of the data source.  
The name of the new data source must be the name of the host on which you are configuring ODBC and installing Content Server.
  7. Click **Next**.  
Another Create a New Data Source dialog box is displayed.
  8. Choose an authentication method for SQL Server to use.
    - If you choose Windows authentication, the database user (repository owner) must have a Windows account and the installation owner must have System Administrator privileges in SQL Server.
    - If you choose SQL Server authentication, the database user (repository owner) does not have to have a Windows account.
  9. Click **Client Configuration**.
    - If SQL Server is on the same host as Content Server, choose Named Pipes.
    - If SQL Server is on a different host from Content Server, choose TCP.
 Another Create a New Data Source dialog box is displayed.
  10. Accept the defaults by clicking **Next**.  
Another Create a New Data Source dialog box is displayed.
  11. Accept the defaults by clicking **Finish**.  
The **ODBC Microsoft SQL Server Setup** dialog box is displayed and provides a summary of the information entered.
  12. Click **Test Data Source**.  
The connection to SQL Server is tested.
  13. Click **OK**.  
The ODBC data source is configured.

## SQL Server repository sizes

In a small repository on SQL Server, the log file size can be changed, but the device size for the database cannot be changed. A small SQL Server repository has a data file size of 100 MB and a log file size that is 30% of the size of the data file.

In a medium or large repository on SQL Server, the device size and the log file size for the database can be changed. A medium SQL Server repository has a data file size of 180 MB and a log file size that is 30% of the size of the data file. A large SQL Server repository has a data file size of 500 MB and a log file size that is 30% of the size of the data file.

## Sybase requirements

The Sybase RDBMS installation must meet the following requirements:

- In the \$SYBASE/*server\_name*.cfg file, set the system parameters number of open objects, number of open indexes, and number of locks.

For more information, refer to [Sybase parameters, page 79](#).

- The database for a new repository is installed with the UTF-8 code page.

For instructions, refer to [Enabling the UTF-8 code page on Sybase, page 79](#). An upgraded repository can continue to use a different code page.

- The correct environment variables are set in the installation owner's environment

For information on these variables, refer to [Setting up the installation owner account, page 52](#).

- The correct Sybase environment variables are set in the installation owner's environment:

- SYBASE
- SYBASE\_OCS
- SYBASE\_SYSAM
- SYBASE\_JRE
- SYBASE\_ASE

If these Sybase environment variables are not set, you see ct\_init (CS\_VERSION\_100) errors.

- In a new repository, set a page size of 4 KB or 8KB.

Refer to [Setting the Sybase 12.5 page size, page 80](#).

- In a repository upgraded to 5.3 SP1, a page size of 2 KB is acceptable, but a page size of 4 KB or 8 KB is recommended
- On Sybase versions 12.0 and greater, ensure that certain Sybase files are in the correct locations.

For more information, refer to [Sybase directory structure, page 81](#).

- If you are using file system devices rather than raw devices, you can manually reset the dsync option on the tempdb devices by using the `sp_deviceattr`. Refer to Sybase documentation for more information on this option.
- You can improve performance of some Documentum scripts by increasing the network packet size to 4 K or 8K.

Documentum does not provide support for Sybase. For assistance in setting up Sybase, contact your database administrator or Sybase.

**To increase the network packet size:**

1. Log in the ISQL.
2. Display the current maximum network packet size:  

```
sp_configure "max network"
```
3. Change the size to 4 K:  

```
sp_configure "max network packet size", 4096
```

or to 8K  

```
sp_configure "max network packet size", 8192
```

## Sybase parameters

You must change some parameters in the `$SYBASE/$SYBASE_ASZ/server_name.cfg` file.

**To modify parameter values in the `$SYBASE/$SYBASE_ASZ/server_name.cfg` file:**

1. Stop the Sybase server.
2. Open the `$SYBASE/$SYBASE_ASZ/server_name.cfg` file in a text editor.
3. Set the following parameters to the values shown:  

```
number of open objects = 2000
number of open indexes = 1000
number of locks = 20000
```
4. Save the `$SYBASE/$SYBASE_ASZ/server_name.cfg` file.
5. Restart the Sybase server.

## Enabling the UTF-8 code page on Sybase

When Sybase is installed, perform these additional configuration steps to enable the UTF-8 code page, which is required for Content Server's internationalization features. UTF-8 must be installed and must be the default code page for the Sybase installation.

**To enable the UTF-8 code page in a new Sybase installation:**

1. Install the Sybase server with the UTF-8 code page.
2. Connect as Sybase administrator.
3. Using isql, connect and run the following query to determine if UTF-8 is installed:

```
1)use master
2)go
1)select name from syscharsets where name='utf8'
2)go
```

If the query returns an answer, UTF-8 is installed.

4. Issue this command to determine whether UTF-8 is the default character set:

```
1> sp_configure 'default character set id'
2> go
```

5. If UTF-8 is not installed or is not the default code page:

- a. Execute this command on the command-line to install the UTF-8 code page:

```
charset -Usa -Ppassword -Shost_name binary.srt utf8
```

- b. Using isql, execute these commands to make UTF-8 the default code page:

```
1)use master
2)go
1)sp_configure 'default character set id',190
2)go
```

6. Restart the Sybase server.
7. Install Content Server and configure a repository.  
If you are upgrading a repository, the procedure is different.

**To enable the UTF-8 code page for a repository upgrade:**

1. Export the database for the existing repository.
2. Use the procedure above for a new installation.
3. Import the database.
4. Perform a repository upgrade using the upgrade-in-place procedure.

## Setting the Sybase 12.5 page size

Content Server 5.3 SP1 is certified only on Sybase 12.5. We recommend the following page sizes:



- For new repositories, a minimum of 4 KB is required, with 8 KB recommended.
- For upgraded repositories, 2 KB is acceptable, but we recommend upgrading to a larger page size.

## Sybase directory structure

Ensure that on Sybase, the file `isql` exists inside `$SYBASE/OCS-12_5/bin/isql`. If the file is there, you need not take further action. If not, create a symbolic link as follows:

```
mcd $SYBASE
mkdir OCS-12_5
cd OCS-12_5
mkdir bin
ln -s $SYBASE/$SYBASE_OCS/bin/isql $SYBASE/OCS-12_5/bin/isql
```

## Sybase connections

Sybase 12.5 defaults to 25 user connections. We recommend increasing this number to at least 200:

```
sp_configure 'number of user connections', 200
```

## Sybase repository sizes

In a small repository on Sybase, the log file size can be changed, but the device size for the database cannot be changed. A small Sybase repository has a data file size of 100 MB and a log file size of 100 MB.

In a medium or large repository on Sybase, the device size and the log file size for the database can be changed. A medium Sybase repository has a data file size of 180 MB and a log file size of 180 MB. A large Sybase repository has a data file size of 250 MB and a log file size of 250 MB.

## DB2 requirements

The DB2 configuration requirements apply whether DB2 and Content Server are running on Windows or AIX or a combination.

On AIX, ensure that the following DB2 environment variables are set in the installation owner's environment:

- DB2\_BASE

This must point to `/DB2_installation_dir/home/instance_name/sqlib`.

- DB2INSTANCE

This must point to the name of the default DB2 instance.

- Ensure that the LIBPATH environment variable includes `$DB2_BASE/lib`.

Do *not* set the environment variable DB2OPTIONS. If set to T, the DB2 command-line processor uses a semicolon (;) as the statement termination character. Content Server does not install properly on AIX with DB2 when DB2OPTIONS is set.

Configuring DB2 requires you to install DB2, create a database for your repository to use, and set some parameters. We also strongly recommend that you run the DB2 Performance Wizard in order to fine-tune the database's performance.

You can create the database and set the parameters from the DB2 command line or from the Control Center. You must use the Control Center to run the Performance Wizard. You can run the Control Center on AIX, or you can run Performance Wizard from a Windows system to tune performance for the instance on AIX.

Ensure that DB2 is installed with the UTF-8 code page.

Use the following general procedure to install and configure DB2:

1. Install DB2 using the procedure described in the next section, [Installing and configuring DB2, page 83](#).
2. Use the Performance Wizard to fine-tune DB2 performance, using procedure described in [Using the Performance Wizard, page 84](#).

This step is optional, but we strongly recommend using the Performance Wizard to ensure the best possible database performance. You can use the Performance Wizard at a later time (after you complete configuring DB2), but if you do so, ensure that the parameter values required by Content Server are not changed.

3. Configure DB2 using the procedure described in [Configuring DB2 From the Control Center, page 86](#) or the procedure described in [Configuring DB2 From the command line, page 87](#).

You can review DB2's current configuration from the DB2 command line:

- To review all database management parameters:

```
get dbm cfg
```

- To review the parameters for a specific database *dbname*:

```
get db cfg for dbname
```

## Installing and configuring DB2

Use the following instructions to install and configure the DB2 instance with which your repository is running.

### To install and configure DB2:

1. Install DB2.
2. Before you create a database for use by Content Server, unset the DB2CODEPAGE environment variable from the command line:

```
db2set DB2CODEPAGE =
```

3. Ensure that the DB2 clients are installed on the Content Server host.
  - If you install DB2 locally (on the same machine as the Documentum Server), the clients are installed automatically.
  - If you install DB2 remotely (on a different machine from the Documentum Server), you must manually install the DB2 clients on the Content Server host.
4. Create a database for use by the repository.
  - a. Start the Control Center.
  - b. Provide a name for the database.
  - c. Provide an alias for the database and note the alias name.  
The alias name must be available during repository creation.
  - d. Use database-managed space (DMS) in the three system tablespaces (SYSCATSPACE, TEMPSPACE1, and USERSPACE1).
  - e. Set the size of TEMPSPACE1 to a minimum of 400 megabytes.
  - f. Set the size of USERSPACE1 and SYSCATSPACE to a minimum of 200 megabytes.
  - g. Set the code page to UTF-8.
5. After you create the database, start the DB2 command line.
6. From the command line, set the DB2CODEPAGE environment variable to 1208:

```
db2set DB2CODEPAGE=1208
```

7. Set the DB2\_RR\_TO\_RS environment variable:

```
db2set DB2_RR_TO_RS=YES
```

This prevents deadlocks and live locks.

8. Set the DB2NTNOCACHE environment variable:

```
db2set DB2NTNOCACHE=1
```

9. If you are installing DB2 7, set the DB2\_INDEX\_2BYTEVARLEN environment variable:

```
db2set DB2_INDEX_2BYTEVARLEN=ON
```

This is not required on DB2 8, where new indexes are type 2 indexes by default.

10. Complete DB2 configuration.

- a. To fine-tune DB2 performance, optionally use the following procedure, [Using the Performance Wizard, page 84](#).

We strongly recommend using the Performance Wizard to tune DB2 performance. If you skip this step now and later decide to use it, ensure that the parameters described in [Configuring DB2 From the Control Center, page 86](#) or [Configuring DB2 From the command line, page 87](#) are set to the correct values.

- b. Set the parameters to the values required by Content Server using the procedures described in [Configuring DB2 From the Control Center, page 86](#) or [Configuring DB2 From the command line, page 87](#).

## Using the Performance Wizard

If your DB2 instance runs on AIX, run Performance Wizard from a Windows system to tune performance for the instance on AIX.

### To use the Performance Wizard to tune DB2 performance:

1. Start the Control Center.
2. Right-click the database you created for the repository.
3. On the context menu, choose **Configure Performance Using Wizard**.  
The name of the production database dialog box is displayed.
4. Click **Next**.  
The server memory dialog box is displayed.
5. Set the server memory target value.
  - If DB2 is installed on the Content Server host and you are installing DB2 Enterprise Edition, set the target memory to 40%.
  - If DB2 is installed on the Content Server host and you are installing DB2 Workgroup Edition, set the target memory to 20%.
  - If DB2 is installed on a different machine from Content Server and you are installing Enterprise Edition, set the target memory to 80%.
6. Ensure that the buffpage value is at least 6000.
7. Click **Next**.

The workload type dialog box is displayed.

8. Click **Mixed**, and click **Next**.

The typical database transaction dialog box is displayed.

9. Indicate the allowable number of SQL statements and transactions.

- If you are installing DB2 Enterprise Edition, click **More than 10 SQL statements** and **60 transactions per minute**, and click **Next**.
- If you are installing DB2 Workgroup Edition, click **Less than 10 SQL statements** and **30 transactions per minute**, and click **Next**.

The database administration priority dialog box is displayed.

10. Click **Faster transaction performance (slower recovery)**, and click **Next**.

The database data population dialog box is displayed.

11. Click **No** and click **Next**.

After the repository is in use and the database contains more data, you can run the Performance Wizard again and change this parameter.

The number of connected applications dialog box is displayed.

12. Provide the average number of local and remote connections.

- If you are installing DB2 Enterprise Edition, type in 4 average local connections and 20 average remote applications and click **Next**.
- If you are installing DB2 Workgroup Edition, type in 4 average local connections and 2 average remote connections and click **Next**.

These numbers may be larger depending on the number of clients connecting to your repository. A production repository may have many more client applications connecting.

The isolation level dialog box is displayed.

13. Click **Cursor stability (many locks of short duration)** and click **Next**.

The Performance Wizard displays values it recommends based on the information you provided and choices you made.

14. Check **Apply these recommendations immediately** and click **Finish**.

15. From the command line, restart the DB2 server:

```
db2stop force
db2start
```

16. Complete DB2 configuration from the Control Center or the DB2 command line.

- To configure DB2 from the Control Center, use the procedure described in [Configuring DB2 From the Control Center, page 86](#)
- To configure DB2 from the command line, use the procedure describe in [Configuring DB2 From the command line, page 87](#)

## Configuring DB2 From the Control Center

Use these instructions to configure DB2 from the DB2 Control Center.

**To configure DB2 from the Control Center:**

1. Start the Control Center.
2. Right-click the database and choose **Configure** from the context menu.
3. Click the **Performance** tab.
  - a. Set the sort heap.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition, set the sort heap to 1024.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Workgroup Edition, set the sort heap to 512.
  - b. Set the application heap size to 1024.
  - c. Set the application control heap size to 256.
  - d. Set the log buffer size.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition, set the log buffer size to 128.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Workgroup Edition, set the log buffer size to 64
  - e. Set the locklist size.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition, set the locklist size to a minimum of 500.
    - If you are configuring the DB2 Workgroup Edition, set the locklist size to 300.
4. Click the **Applications** tab and set the maximum number of locks to 80.
5. Click the **Logs** tab.
  - a. Set the log file size to 1000.
  - b. Set the number of primary logs to 5.
  - c. Set the logsecond size.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition, set the size to 10.
    - If you are configuring DB2 Workgroup Edition, set the size to 15.
6. Click **Okay** and close the dialog box.
7. When the Control Center is displayed, click the database for your repository and right-click **Buffer Pools**.
8. Choose **Alter**.

The Alter Buffer Pool dialog box displays.
9. Check **Use default bufferpool size**, and click **Okay**.
10. From the command line, restart the DB2 server:

```
db2stop force
db2start
```

## Configuring DB2 From the command line

### To configuring DB2 from the command line:

1. Start the DB2 command line.
2. Set the application heap size to 1024 or greater, where *dbname* is the name of the database you created for use by the repository:

```
update
db cfg for dbname using applheapsz 1024
```

3. Set the application control heap size to 256 or greater:

```
update
db cfg for dbname using APP_CTL_HEAP_SZ 256
```

4. Set the transaction file sizes.

- If you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition:

```
update db cfg for dbname using LOGFILSIZ 1000
update db cfg for dbname using LOGPRIMARY 5
update db cfg for dbname using logbufsz 128
update db cfg for dbname using logsecond 10
```

- If you are configuring DB2 Workgroup Edition:

```
update db cfg for dbname using LOGFILSIZ 1000
update db cfg for dbname using LOGPRIMARY 5
update db cfg for dbname using logbufsz 64
update db cfg for dbname using logsecond 15
```

5. Set the maximum number of locks:

```
update db cfg for dbname using maxlocks 80
```

6. Set the locklist size to a minimum of 500.

- On the DB2 Enterprise Edition, set it to a minimum of 500:

```
update db cfg for dbname using locklist 500
```

- On the DB2 Workgroup Edition, set it to 300:

```
update db cfg for dbname using locklist 300
```

7. Set the sort heap and buffer page sizes.

Ensure that the buffer page size (*buffpagesize*) is set to a minimum of 6000:

- If you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition:

```
update db cfg for dbname using sortheap 1024
update db cfg for dbname using buffpage buffpagesize
```

- If you are configuring DB2 Workgroup Edition:

```
update db cfg for dbname using sortheap 512
update db cfg for dbname using buffpage buffpagesize
```

- If Documentum and the DB2 server are on the same machine and you are configuring DB2 Enterprise Edition, set *buffpagesize* to 40% of the available physical memory divided by the page size of your tablespace.
- If Documentum and the DB2 server are on the same machine and you are configuring DB2 Workgroup Edition, set *buffpagesize* to 20% of the available physical memory divided by the page size of your tablespace.
- If Documentum and the DB2 server are on different machines, set *buffpagesize* to 80% of the available physical memory divided by the page size of your tablespace.

**Note:** If you are running more than one repository and database on the same DB2 server, the percentage recommended for buffer pool is for the sum of all databases. In all cases, ensure that the buffer page size is a minimum of 6000.

8. If you see the SQL1482W error message “The BUFFPAGE parameter will only be used if one of the buffer pools is defined with a size of -1,” change the buffer pool size:

```
ALTER BUFFERPOOL buffpoolname SIZE -1
```

9. From the command line, restart DB2:

```
db2stop force
db2start
```

10. If DB2 is installed remotely, use the DB2 Client Configuration Assistant after database creation to add the database alias to the list of available databases.

## Running multiple Documentum Servers on the DB2 host

If you run multiple Content Servers on the DB2 host machine, you may see a DB2 SQL1224N error. This can occur with multiple repositories on the host or with multiple servers running against a single repository. To work around this, change two parameters:

- On AIX, set EXTSHM to ON in the environment of the DB2 instance owner. You can do this in the *.cshrc* file or the corresponding system file for the different shells.

```
setenv EXTSHM ON
```

- On Windows, set the EXTSHM environment variable at the system level.
- In the DB2 environment, run this command:

```
db2set DB2ENVLIST=EXTSHM
```



## DB2 repository sizes

In a small repository on DB2, a single tablespace contains the data and indexes and an index tablespace cannot be configured. A small DB2 repository has an initial data file size of 200 MB.

In a medium or large repository on DB2, one tablespace contains the data and another tablespace contains the indexes, and an index tablespace can be configured. A medium DB2 repository has an initial data file size of 400 MB and an initial index file size of 200 MB. A large DB2 repository has an initial data file size of 800 MB and an initial index file size of 300 MB.



## Express Installation

This chapter contains step-by-step instructions for installing the Content Server software and using the express configuration option to create a connection broker and repository.

Choosing express installation minimizes the amount of information that you must provide during the installation procedure. It also constrains how much you can customize the configuration of Content Server and the repository.

To customize Content Server and repository configuration, use the installation procedure described in [Chapter 6, Custom Installation](#).

To upgrade from a previous release of Content Server, use the procedure described in [Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server](#).

If you are setting up Microsoft Windows Cluster Services to provide failover support to your repository, do not use the procedures in this chapter. Use the procedures described in [Appendix G, Installing Content Server With Microsoft Cluster Services](#).

If full-text indexing will be enabled for the new repositories, review the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

If you are setting up a distributed configuration, you can use the instructions in this chapter to install the primary site, or you can use the instructions in [Chapter 6, Custom Installation](#). To add additional sites, refer to [Chapter 7, Installing Remote Servers in Distributed Configurations](#).

Before you install, review [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#), and [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#).

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Creating the Server software installation on the host, page 92](#)
- [Configuring the Server and repository, page 95](#)

# Creating the Server software installation on the host

The first part of the installation process copies files from the installation media to the correct directories on your hard disk.

On Windows, this procedure also sets environment variables needed by Content Server.

On Windows, if you exit the Setup part of the installation program, all Content Server registry entries are deleted. To install a component that was not previously installed, you must go through the complete Setup program.

## To create the server installation on the host computer:

1. Log in to the host system using the installation owner account.
  - On Windows, use an account that is a member of the local Administrators group.

On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name and password. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.

- On UNIX and Linux, connect using an account that is a member of the Documentum and installation owner group.

To confirm the account's group membership, type the following at the command prompt:

Solaris:

```
% id -a
```

AIX and HP-UX:

```
% id
```

2. To install from the Documentum FTP site:
  - a. Navigate to the correct product directory.
  - b. Navigate to the server version corresponding to your operating system and database.
3. To install from a CD:
  - a. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  - b. On the CD, navigate to the subfolder corresponding to your operating system and database.
4. Save the compressed distribution file from the CD or the FTP site to your hard disk.
5. Navigate to the file's location on your hard disk.

6. Extract the file.

- a. On Windows, double-click the file.
- b. On UNIX and Linux, untar the file:

```
% tar xvf filename
```

The following files are extracted from the compressed file:

```
bofcollaborationSetup.jar
bofworkflowSetup.jar
consistency_checker.ebs
dfcoperatingsystemSetup.jar
serveroperatingsystemSetup.jar
serverWinSuiteSetup.exe (Windows) or
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin (UNIX and Linux)
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.jar
tcfSetup.jar
tomcatoperatingsystem<versionnumber>Setup.jar
```

7. Start the installation program.

- On Windows, double-click the file named serverWinSuiteSetup.exe.
- On UNIX and Linux, type

```
% serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin
```

and press Enter, where *operatingsystem* is the operating system on which you are installing.

The Setup program starts and a Welcome dialog box is displayed.

8. Read the information on the dialog box and click **Next**.

The installer verifies operating system requirements. The license agreement dialog box is displayed.

9. Click **Next** if you accept the terms of the license agreement.

Otherwise, the installer exits.

10. If you are installing on Windows, choose installation directories for Content Server and DFC; if you are installing on UNIX and Linux, skip to step [Step 11](#).

- a. Click **Next** to accept the default Content Server installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different installation directory.

The default directory is C:\Documentum.

- b. To install the DFC developer documentation, select the checkbox.

- c. To install the Primary Interop Assembly, select the checkbox.

Check the Primary Interop Assembly Installer checkbox to request installation of a Microsoft installer package (.msi file) for the DFC primary interop assembly (PIA), or leave the box unchecked if you do not wish to have the package

installed. The installer places the installer package for the DFC PIA into the setup subdirectory of the program root.

- d. Click **Next**.
  - e. If DFC is not on the host, click **Next** to accept the default DFC installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.  
A dialog box is displayed indicating the default user directory. This directory is used by DFC during the checkout or export of documents.
  - f. Click **Next** to accept the default User directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.
  - g. Designate a repository that is a business objects framework global registry for the DFC to use.
  - h. Type the global registry user's user login name and password for the repository.  
Do not check **Validate Entries** or the installer fails.
11. To enable Trusted Content Services, select the checkbox and type in the Trusted Content Services license key, then click **Next**.
  12. To enable Content Services for EMC Centera, select the checkbox and type in the Content Services for EMC Centera license key, then click **Next**.
  13. Type the port numbers for the Java method server.
    - The first port is the primary port used by the Java method server (Apache Tomcat) for communications with Content Server.  
The default port is 9080.
    - The second port is the port used for Tomcat administration.  
The default port is 9007.The ports must not be used by another application and must not be the ports used by Site Caching Services.  
The Tomcat instance is also used for running the ACS server.
  14. Click **Next**.  
A panel displays the software to be installed.
  15. Click **Next**.
  16. If any components already exist on the host computer, click **Yes** or **Yes to All** to replace the older components.  
A dialog box displays information about the products installed and their locations and indicates that the installation is complete.
  17. Click **Next**.  
DFC and Content Server are installed.

18. If you are installing on UNIX or Linux, you are asked whether to perform the root task, which sets file permissions for the password checking and password changing programs.
  - a. To perform the task, click **Next**.
  - b. Type the root password and press Enter.  
A new window opens.
  - c. Provide the name of the administrator group and press Enter.  
The windows closes and you are returned to the main Xterm window to continue installation.  
The Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment and Documentum Content Server software are installed.
19. Choose whether to continue with server configuration.
  - To configure the server immediately, click **Configure server for new repository or upgrade existing repository** and click **Next**.
  - To configure the server at another time, click **Configure server later** and click **Next**.
20. Click **Next**.
21. On Windows, indicate whether to restart the host now or later.  
The installation is not complete until the host is restarted.
  - To restart the host immediately, click **Yes, restart my system** and click **Finish**.  
The host restarts.
  - To restart the host at a later time, click **No, restart my system at a later time** and click **Finish**.  
Server installation is complete.

## Configuring the Server and repository

This section provides instructions for configuring the Server and a repository. Perform this part of the installation after you install the software and restarted the machine.

### To configure the repository:

1. If you are on Windows, log in to Windows as the Documentum installation owner.  
If the setup process continues automatically, a Welcome dialog box is displayed.  
If the setup process does not continue automatically, follow these steps:
  - a. Restart the machine manually.

- b. After the reboot is completed, log in as the Documentum installation owner.
  - c. Navigate to the DM\_HOME/install directory.
  - d. Double-click the Server\_Configuration\_Program.exe file.
2. If you are on UNIX or Linux, type these commands:  

```
% cd $DM_HOME/install  
% dm_launch_server_config_program.sh
```

A welcome dialog box is displayed.
3. Click **Next**.
4. If you are installing on Windows, provide the installation owner's password and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies the password.
5. Click **Express** and then **Next**.  
The installer verifies system information and creates a new connection broker. The New Repository dialog box is displayed.
6. Configure a repository.
  - a. To enable Content Storage Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
  - b. To enable Collaborative Services or Collaborative Services with Rooms in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
  - c. To enable Retention Policy Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
  - d. To enable Records Manager in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
  - e. Type the name of the repository.  
For more information on the repository name, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).
  - f. Type the repository ID.  
For more information on the repository ID, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).
  - g. Type a description for the repository.
  - h. Select the repository size.
  - i. On UNIX and Linux, provide the service name for the repository.  
This is the service name you entered in the services file.
  - j. On Windows, select the authentication domain.



- k. On Windows, indicate whether the repository service starts automatically or manually. Check **Automatic** to start the Server automatically or **Manual** to start the Server manually.
  - l. Click **Next**.
  - m. Select the mode in which clients connect to the repository.
    - Select **Native** for unsecure connections
    - Select **Secure** for secure connections
    - Select **Native and Secure** if clients can use either connection mode
  - n. Click **Next**.
7. Select whether to create a new database user account and storage areas or use an existing user account and storage and click **Next**.  
The database user is the repository owner.
8. If you chose to create a new database user account, provide database information.
- a. Choose the correct database connection string for your database instance.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
    - On Sybase, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.  
This defaults to the repository name. This user becomes the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password and confirm the password.
  - d. Type the database administrator's user name and password.
  - e. Click **Next**.
9. If you chose to use an existing database account and tablespaces or databases, provide database information.
- a. Choose the correct database connection string for the database instance you are using.
  - b. Type the database user's name.  
This is for an existing database account. This user becomes the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password.
  - d. Click **Next**.  
The repository service starts.
10. Type the name of an SMTP server on the network and the email address of the installation owner.

11. Click **Next**.

The installation program runs the repository configuration scripts.

12. To use the current repository as the global registry repository, select **Use this Repository** and click **Next**.

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Accept the user login name of the global registry user or type in a new user login name.
- b. Type the global registry user's password.
- c. Confirm the global registry user's password and click **Next**.

13. To use a different repository as the global registry repository, select **Specify a Different Repository** and click **Next**

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Type the repository name.  
The repository must be known to the connection broker you specified during DFC installation.
- b. Type the user login name of the global registry user for the repository.
- c. Type the global registry user's password.

14. To designate the global registry repository at a different time, select **Do Later** and click **Next**.15. A warning message to enable the global registry connection is displayed. Click **CONTINUE**.16. If you are enabling SSL, indicate whether to restart the repository and click **Next**.  
Restarting the repository enables secure client connections to the server.17. If the installer displays the repository successfully created screen, then click **Next**.18. Click **Finish**.

## 19. On AIX, restart the repository.

This loads required full-text plugins.

## 20. If you created a new repository on a host where Thumbnail Server is already installed, manually configure the base\_url:

- a. Determine the value of base\_url.
  - The base\_url attribute takes the following format:

`http://host:port/thumbsrv/getThumbnail?`

*host* is the name of the host where you are installing. The value of *host* can be the machine name (for example, isadora) or a fully-qualified name (for example, isadora.mycompany.com).

*port* is the primary Thumbnail Server port you provided when you installed Thumbnail Server.

- The Thumbnail Server installation log contains the value of `base_url` for the host. The log is located in `%DM_HOME%\thumbsrv\install\install.log`.
- b. Use IDQL or Documentum Administrator to connect to the repository as a superuser.

- c. Execute the following query to set `base_url`:

```
UPDATE dm_filestore OBJECTS SET base_url='base_url' WHERE
media_type=1
```

*base\_url* is the value you determined in [Step a](#) above.

- d. Disconnect from the repository.

21. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).

The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

22. To install the full-text indexing software, refer to the instructions in the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.



## Custom Installation

This chapter contains step-by-step instructions for installing the Content Server software and using the custom configuration option to create the connection broker and repository.

Use the procedures in this chapter if you are installing Content Server for the first time on a particular machine and you want to customize the default configuration. If you do not plan to customize the default repository configuration, use the simplified procedure described in [Chapter 5, Express Installation](#).

To upgrade from a previous release of Content Server, use the instructions in [Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server](#).

If you are setting up Microsoft Cluster Services in order to provide failover support for your repository, use the procedure described in [Appendix G, Installing Content Server With Microsoft Cluster Services](#).

If full-text indexing will be enabled for the new repositories, review the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

If you are setting up a distributed configuration, you can use the instructions in this chapter to install the primary site, or you can use the simplified installation procedure described in [Chapter 5, Express Installation](#). To add additional sites to a distributed content environment, use the instructions in [Chapter 7, Installing Remote Servers in Distributed Configurations](#). Refer to the *Documentum Distributed Configuration Guide* for information on other distributed configurations.

Before you install, review [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#), and [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#).

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Creating the Server software installation on the host, page 102](#)
- [Configuring the Server and repository , page 105](#)

# Creating the Server software installation on the host

The first part of the installation process copies files from the installation media to the correct directories on your hard disk.

On Windows, this procedure also sets environment variables needed by Content Server.

If you exit the Setup part of the installation program, all Content Server registry entries are deleted. To install a component that was not previously installed, you must go through the complete Setup program.

## To create the server installation on the host computer:

1. Log in to the host system using the installation owner account.
  - On Windows, use an account that is a member of the local Administrators group.

On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name and password. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.
  - On UNIX and Linux, connect using an account that is a member of the Documentum and installation owner group.

To confirm the account's group membership, type the following at the command prompt:

Solaris:

```
% id -a
```

AIX and HP-UX:

```
% id
```
2. To install from the Documentum FTP site:
  - a. Navigate to the correct product directory.
  - b. Navigate to the server version corresponding to your operating system and database.
3. To install from a CD:
  - a. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  - b. On the CD, navigate to the subfolder corresponding to your operating system and database.
4. Save the compressed distribution file from the CD or the FTP site to your hard disk.
5. Navigate to the file's location on your hard disk.

6. Extract the file.

- a. On Windows, double-click the file.
- b. On UNIX and Linux, untar the file:

```
% tar xvf filename
```

The following files are extracted from the compressed file:

```
bofcollaborationSetup.jar
bofworkflowSetup.jar
consistency_checker.ebs
dfcoperatingsystemSetup.jar
serveroperatingsystemSetup.jar
serverWinSuiteSetup.exe (Windows) or
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin (UNIX and Linux)
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.jar
tcfSetup.jar
tomcatoperatingsystem<versionnumber>Setup.jar
```

7. Start the installation program.

- On Windows, double-click the file named serverWinSuiteSetup.exe.
- On UNIX and Linux, type

```
% serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin
```

and press Enter, where *operatingsystem* is the operating system on which you are installing.

The Setup program starts and a Welcome dialog box is displayed.

8. Read the information on the dialog box and click **Next**.

The installer verifies operating system requirements. The license agreement dialog box is displayed.

9. Click **Next** if you accept the terms of the license agreement.

Otherwise, the installer exits.

10. If you are installing on Windows, choose installation directories for Content Server and DFC; if you are installing on UNIX or Linux, skip to step [Step 13](#).

- a. Click **Next** to accept the default Content Server installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different installation directory.

The default directory is C:\Documentum.

- b. To install the DFC developer documentation, select the checkbox.

- c. To install the Primary Interop Assembly, select the checkbox.

Check the Primary Interop Assembly Installer checkbox to request installation of a Microsoft installer package (.msi file) for the DFC primary interop assembly (PIA), or leave the box unchecked if you do not wish to have the package

installed. The installer places the installer package for the DFC PIA into the setup subdirectory of the program root.

- d. Click **Next**.
  - e. If DFC is not on the host, click **Next** to accept the default DFC installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.  
A dialog box is displayed indicating the default user directory. This directory is used by DFC during the checkout or export of documents.
  - f. Click **Next** to accept the default User directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.
  - g. If there is no dmcl.ini file on the host, provide the name of the connection broker to be used by clients on the host and the port number on which the connection broker listens, then click **Next**.  
The information is used to create the dmcl.ini file on the host. The default connection broker port is 1489.
11. If you wish to install the DFC developer documentation, select the **Developer Documentation** checkbox and then click **Next**.
  12. Type the Primary Connection Broker Host Name and the Port Number, then click **Next**. The default port is 1489.
  13. To enable Trusted Content Services, select the checkbox and type in the Trusted Content Services license key, then click **Next**.  
If you are installing a distributed configuration, all servers or no servers must enable Trusted Content Services.
  14. To enable Content Services for EMC Centera, select the checkbox and type in the Content Services for EMC Centera license key, then click **Next**.
  15. Type the port numbers for the Java method server.
    - The first port is the primary port used by the Java method server (Apache Tomcat) for communications with Content Server.  
The default port is 9080.
    - The second port is the port used for Tomcat administration.  
The default port is 9007.The Tomcat instance is also used for the ACS server on the host. The ports must not be used by another application and must not be the ports used by Site Caching Services.
  16. Click **Next**.  
A panel displays the software to be installed.
  17. Click **Next**.



18. If any components already exist on the host computer, click **Yes** or **Yes to All** to replace the older components.  
A dialog box displays information about the products installed and their locations and indicates that the installation is complete.
19. Click **Next**.  
DFC and Content Server are installed.
20. If you are installing on UNIX or Linux, you are asked whether to perform the root task, which sets file permissions for the password checking and password changing programs.
  - a. To perform the task, click **Next**.
  - b. Type the root password and press Enter.  
A new window opens.
  - c. Provide the name of the administrator group and press Enter.  
The window closes and you are returned to the main Xterm window to continue installation.  
The Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment and Documentum Content Server software are installed. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.
21. Choose whether to continue with server configuration.
  - To configure the server immediately, click **Configure server for new repository or upgrade existing repository** and click **Next**.
  - To configure the server at another time, click **Configure server later** and click **Next**.
22. Click **Finish**. Server installation is complete.

## Configuring the Server and repository

This section provides instructions for configuring the Server and a repository. Follow these instructions after you complete the instructions in [Creating the Server software installation on the host, page 102](#).

### To configure the Server and repository:

1. Start the configuration program.
  - On UNIX and Linux, type these commands:
 

```
% cd $DM_HOME/install
% dm_launch_server_config_program.sh
```
  - On Windows, log in to Windows as the Documentum installation owner.

If the setup process on Windows does not continue automatically, follow these steps:

- a. Restart the host manually.
  - b. After the reboot is completed, log in as the Documentum installation owner.
  - c. Navigate to the DM\_HOME/install directory.
  - d. Double-click the Server\_Configuration\_Program.exe file.  
A Welcome dialog box is displayed.
2. Click **Next**.  
On Windows, the Installation Owner Password dialog box is displayed.
  3. On Windows, provide the installation owner's password and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies the password.
  4. If you did not enable Trusted Content Services during installation, optionally choose to enable TCS, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
  5. If you did not enable Content Services for EMC Centera during installation, optionally choose to enable the feature, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
  6. Click **Custom Configuration** and click **Next**.
  7. Choose whether to configure a connection broker, a repository, or both, and click **Next**.
    - If you checked connection broker, the connection broker configuration dialog box is displayed.
    - If you checked repository but not connection broker, the repository configuration dialog box is displayed. Skip to [Step 9](#).
  8. Configure a connection broker on the Content Server host.
    - a. Choose **Create a new connection broker** and click **Next**.
    - b. Type the connection broker name and the port number on which the connection broker listens or accept the defaults.  
The default port is 1489.
    - c. On Windows, click **Automatic** for automatic connection broker startup or **Manual** for manual startup.  
The connection broker is started.
    - d. Configure more connection brokers or continue to repository configuration.
      - To configure more connection brokers on the Content Server host, click **Configure an additional connection broker** and click **Next**.  
Ensure that you provide each additional connection broker with a unique port number that is not used by another application.

- To configure a repository, click **Continue with server configuration** and click **Next**.
- e. Click **Next**.  
The connection broker is configured and started.
  9. Configure a repository on the Content Server host.
    - a. Click **Create a new repository** and then click **Next**.
    - b. To enable Content Storage Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
    - c. To enable Collaborative Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
    - d. To enable Retention Policy Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.  
The Data Directory dialog box is displayed. The data directory is where Content Server stores content files.
    - e. To enable Records Manager in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
    - f. Choose a data directory location.
      - On Windows, click **Next** to accept the default, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**.
      - On UNIX and Linux, click **Next** to accept the default, or type in a new location, then click **Next**.

Do not choose a directory that is used by another repository for content file storage or any other purpose.

The Share Directory Destination dialog box is displayed. The Share directory is where client products, sample code, and libraries are stored.
    - g. Choose a share directory location.
      - On Windows, click **Next** to accept the default, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**.
      - On UNIX and Linux, click **Next** to accept the default, or type in a new location, then click **Next**.

The Repository Information dialog box is displayed.
    - h. Type the name of the repository.  
For more information on the repository name, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).
    - i. Type the repository ID.  
For more information on the repository ID, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).

- j. Type a description of the repository.
- k. Select the repository size.
- l. On UNIX and Linux, type in the service name for the repository.  
This is the service name you entered in the services file.
- m. On Windows, select the authentication domain and server startup type.  
If you select Automatic, the server starts automatically when the host is restarted.
- n. Click **Next**.
- o. Choose the mode in which clients connect to the repository.
  - Check **Native** for unsecure connections
  - Check **Secure** for secure connections
  - Check **Native and Secure** if clients can use either connection mode.
10. Select whether to create a new database user account and storage areas or use an existing user account and storage and click **Next**.  
The database user is the repository owner.
11. If you chose to create a new database user account, provide database information.  
If you are using an existing database account, skip to [Step 14](#).
  - a. Choose the correct database connection string for your database instance.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
    - On Sybase, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.  
The database user's name defaults to the repository name. The user becomes the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password and confirm the password.
  - d. Type the database administrator's user name and password.
  - e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Accept the default paths and sizes for database storage or change them and click **Next**.
    - On Oracle, these are the Data Tablespace Data File Path and Index Tablespace Data File Path
    - On SQL Server, these are the Data Device File Path and Log Device File Path
    - On Sybase, these are the Data Device File Path and Log Device File Path
    - On DB2, these are the Tablespace File Path and Index Data File PathThe tablespace or database creation dialog box is displayed.

- g. Edit or accept the default database scripts.
  - To edit the tablespace or database creation or deletion script, select the script and click **Edit**. When you have saved the file, click **Next**.
  - To accept the default scripts and run them, click **Next**.

The new tablespaces or databases are created.

12. Type the connection broker connection information for the connection broker to which you want the repository to project.

This information is used to create the server.ini file. The default connection broker is the connection broker on the server host, but the repository can project to any connection broker on your network.

- a. Type the connection broker port number.  
The port number is the port where the connection broker listens.
- b. Type the connection broker host name and click **Next**.  
The connection broker connection is tested.

13. Accept or modify the Content Server and Site Caching Services initialization files.

The server.ini file contains Content Server initialization information. The webcache.ini file contains Site Caching Services initialization information. If you are installing on DB2 or Oracle and you want to the database parameters for the Documentum type tables, you must edit the server.ini file during this step. You cannot change this after the server starts and creates the database tables for the repository. For more information on the server.ini parameters FUNCTION\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE and TYPE\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE, refer to [Appendix F, Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables](#).

- To accept the files, click **Next**.
- To edit the server.ini file, select Server Initialization File and click **Edit**. After you save the file, click **Next**.
- To edit the webcache.ini file, select WebCache Initialization File and click **Edit**. After you save the file, click **Next**.

14. If you chose to use an existing database account and tablespaces or databases, provide database information.

- a. Choose the correct database connection string for the database instance you are using.
  - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
  - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
  - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - On Sybase, select the database name from the dropdown list
- b. Type the database user's name.  
This is for an existing database account. The user becomes the repository owner.

- c. Type the database user's password.
  - d. Click **Next**.
  - e. Choose the correct index tablespace or data file name.
  - f. Click **Next**.
15. If you are installing on Windows, provide SMTP server information.  
The SMTP server is used to send email notifications to the installation owner and repository users.
- a. Type the name or IP address of a computer on your network that hosts an SMTP Server.  
The computer can be a remote host or the computer hosting Content Server. All UNIX operating systems and Windows 2000 Server include an SMTP server.
  - b. Type the installation owner's email address.
  - c. Click **Next**.  
If the configuration program cannot connect with the SMTP server, a warning message is displayed. Provide a valid host name or address for the SMTP server or ignore the warning and proceed with the installation.
16. To use the current repository as the global registry repository, select **Use this Repository** and click **Next**.  
The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).
- a. Accept the user login name of the global registry user or type in a new user login name.
  - b. Type the global registry user's password.
  - c. Confirm the global registry user's password and click **Next**.
17. To use a different repository as the global registry repository, select **Specify a Different Repository** and click **Next**.  
The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).
- a. Type the repository name.  
The repository must be known to the connection broker you specified during DFC installation.
  - b. Type the user login name of the global registry user for the repository.
  - c. Type the global registry user's password.

18. To designate the global registry repository at a different time, select **Do Later** and click **Next**.
19. A warning message to enable the global registry connection is displayed. Click **CONTINUE**.
20. Accept or modify the repository configuration scripts.

- To accept the files, click **Next**.
- To edit a script, select it and click **Edit**. After you edit and save all the scripts you are modifying, click **Next**.

Use caution in editing the scripts. Errors in the scripts can cause problems in the repository. For information on what each of the scripts does, refer to [Appendix D, Content Server Installation Directories and Repository Configuration Scripts](#).

The scripts run and the repository is configured. Click **Next**.

21. Choose whether to restart the repository service in order to enable SSL (secure) client connections.
  - To enable SSL (secure) client connections, click **Restart repository now** and click **Next**.  
The repository stops and is restarted.
  - To restart the repository at a different time, click **Restart repository later** and click **Next**.
22. Choose whether to configure additional repositories on the host.
  - To configure additional repositories, select the checkbox and click **Next**, then skip back to [Step 9](#).
  - To continue, click **Next**.

A dialog box with information about the products configured on the host is displayed.

23. Click **Finish**.
24. On AIX, restart the repository.  
This loads required full-text plugins.
25. If you created a new repository on a host where Thumbnail Server is already installed, manually configure the `base_url`:
  - a. Determine the value of `base_url`.

- The `base_url` attribute takes the following format:

```
http://host:port/thumbrsv/getThumbnail?
```

*host* is the name of the host where you are installing. The value of *host* can be the machine name (for example, *isadora*) or a fully-qualified name (for example, *isadora.mycompany.com*).

*port* is the primary Thumbnail Server port you provided when you installed Thumbnail Server.

- The Thumbnail Server installation log contains the value of `base_url` for the host. The log is located in `%DM_HOME%\thumbsrv\install\install.log`.
  - b. Use IDQL or Documentum Administrator to connect to the repository as a superuser.
  - c. Execute the following query to set `base_url`:  

```
UPDATE dm_filestore OBJECTS SET base_url='base_url' WHERE  
media_type=1
```

*base\_url* is the value you determined in [Step a](#) above.
  - d. Disconnect from the repository.
26. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).  
The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.
27. To install the full-text indexing software, refer to the instructions in the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.



# Installing Remote Servers in Distributed Configurations

This chapter provides instructions for installing and configuring remote Content Servers (also known as content-file servers) in distributed content configurations. It contains the following topics:

- [Creating the server software installation on the remote host, page 113](#)
- [Configuring the remote Content Server, page 117](#)

Before you install, review [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#), and [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#). The remote host must meet the same preinstallation requirements as the primary Content Server host.

If you are upgrading an existing distributed configuration, use the instructions in [Upgrading a distributed configuration, page 120](#). The remote Content Server configuration program cannot be used to upgrade pre-5.3 SP1 remote servers.

## Creating the server software installation on the remote host

### **Creating the Server software installation on the host**

The first part of the installation process copies files from the installation media to the correct directories on your hard disk.

On Windows, this procedure also sets environment variables needed by Content Server.

If you exit the Setup part of the installation program, all Content Server registry entries are deleted. To install a component that was not previously installed, you must go through the complete Setup program.

### **To create the server installation on the host computer:**

1. Log in to the host system using the installation owner account.
  - On Windows, use an account that is a member of the local Administrators group.

On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name and password. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.

- On UNIX and Linux, connect using an account that is a member of the Documentum and installation owner group.

To confirm the account's group membership, type the following at the command prompt:

Solaris:

```
% id -a
```

AIX and HP-UX:

```
% id
```

2. To install from the Documentum FTP site:
  - a. Navigate to the correct product directory.
  - b. Navigate to the server version corresponding to your operating system and database.
3. To install from a CD:
  - a. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  - b. On the CD, navigate to the subfolder corresponding to your operating system and database.
4. Save the compressed distribution file from the CD or the FTP site to your hard disk.
5. Navigate to the file's location on your hard disk.
6. Extract the file.
  - a. On Windows, double-click the file.
  - b. On UNIX and Linux, untar the file:

```
% tar xvf filename
```

The following files are extracted from the compressed file:

bofcollaborationSetup.jar

bofworkflowSetup.jar

consistency\_checker.ebs

dfcoperatingsystemSetup.jar

serveroperatingsystemSetup.jar

serverWinSuiteSetup.exe (Windows) or

serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin (UNIX and Linux)

serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.jar

tcfSetup.jar

tomcatoperatingsystem4127Setup.jar

7. Start the installation program.

- On Windows, double-click the file named `serverWinSuiteSetup.exe`.
- On UNIX and Linux, type

```
% serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin
```

and press Enter, where *operatingsystem* is the operating system on which you are installing.

The Setup program starts and a Welcome dialog box is displayed.

8. Read the information on the dialog box and click **Next**.

The installer verifies operating system requirements. The license agreement dialog box is displayed.

9. Click **Next** if you accept the terms of the license agreement.

Otherwise, the installer exits.

10. If you are installing on Windows, choose installation directories for Content Server and DFC; if you are installing on UNIX or Linux, skip to step [Step 11](#).

- a. Click **Next** to accept the default Content Server installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different installation directory.

The default directory is `C:\Documentum`.

- b. To install the DFC developer documentation, select the checkbox.

- c. To install the Primary Interop Assembly, select the checkbox.

Check the Primary Interop Assembly Installer checkbox to request installation of a Microsoft installer package (.msi file) for the DFC primary interop assembly (PIA), or leave the box unchecked if you do not wish to have the package installed. The installer places the installer package for the DFC PIA into the setup subdirectory of the program root.

- d. Click **Next**.

- e. If DFC is not on the host, click **Next** to accept the default DFC installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.

A dialog box is displayed indicating the default user directory. This directory is used by DFC during the checkout or export of documents.

- f. Click **Next** to accept the default User directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.

- g. Designate a repository that is a business objects framework global registry for the DFC to use.

- h. Type the global registry user's user login name and password for the repository. Do not check **Validate Entries** or the installer fails.

11. If the primary Content Server for the repository enables Trusted Content Services, select the checkbox and type in the Trusted Content Services license key, then click **Next**.

All Content Servers in a distributed configuration must enable Trusted Content Services or none must enable Trusted Content Services.

12. To enable Content Services for EMC Centera, select the checkbox and type in the Content Services for EMC Centera license key, then click **Next**.

13. Type the port numbers for the Java method server.

- The first port is the primary port used by the Java method server (Apache Tomcat) for communications with Content Server.

The default port is 9080.

- The second port is the port used for Tomcat administration.

The default port is 9007.

The Tomcat instance also runs the ACS server. The ports must not be used by another application and must not be the ports used by Site Caching Services.

14. Click **Next**.

A panel displays the software to be installed.

15. Click **Next**.

16. If any components already exist on the host computer, click **Yes** or **Yes to All** to replace the older components.

A dialog box displays information about the products installed and their locations and indicates that the installation is complete.

17. Click **Next**.

DFC and Content Server are installed.

18. If you are installing on UNIX or Linux, you are asked whether to perform the root task, which sets file permissions for the password checking and password changing programs.

- a. To perform the task, click **Yes**.

- b. Type the root password and press Enter.

A new window opens.

- c. Provide the name of the administrator group and press Enter.

The window closes and you are returned to the main Xterm window to continue installation.

The Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment and Documentum Content Server software are installed.

19. Choose whether to continue with server configuration.

- To configure the server immediately, click **Configure content-file server for use with an existing repository** and click **Next**.
  - To configure the server at another time, click **Configure Server later** and click **Next**.
20. Click **Next**.
21. On Windows, indicate whether to restart the host now or later.  
The installation is not complete until the host is restarted.
- To restart the host immediately, click **Yes, restart my computer** and click **Finish**.  
The host restarts.
  - To restart the host at a later time, click **No, restart my computer at a later time** and click **Finish**.  
The server software installation is complete.

## Configuring the remote Content Server

Use these instructions to configure the remote Content Server.

### To configure the remote Content Server:

1. Start the remote Content Server configuration program.
  - On Windows, the configuration program starts automatically following a reboot of the host.  
  
If the configuration program does not start automatically, or if you have delete the remote server and need to reconfigure the server, navigate to %DM\_HOME%\install and double-click cfsConfigurationProgram.exe.
  - On UNIX or Linux, navigate to \$DM\_HOME/install and type:  

```
%dm_launch_cfs_server_config_program.sh
```

A Welcome dialog box is displayed.
2. Click **Next**.  
On Windows, the Installation Owner Password dialog box is displayed.
3. On Windows, type in the installation owner's password and click **Next**.
4. Type the host name of the primary connection broker for the repository and verify or type in the port on which the connection broker listens, then click **Next**.  
The port defaults to 1489.
5. Select the repository for which you are installing the remote Content Server, type in the user name and password for a Superuser in that repository, and click **Next**.

The repository list is populated with repositories known to the connection broker for which you provided information in the previous step. The Superuser name defaults to the Documentum installation owner's name.

6. Type the name and port number for the connection broker on the current host, indicate whether connection broker startup following a system restart is automatic or manual, and click **Next**.

The default values are Docbroker and 1489. The connection broker is started.

7. Accept the default location of the data directory or browse to a different location and click **Next**.

The data directory is where content files are stored in the repository.

8. Accept the default location of the share directory or browse to a different location and click **Next**.

The share directory is where clients, example code, and required libraries are stored.

9. Accept the default service name for the new remote Content Server or type in a different name click **Next**.

10. Click **Finish**.

The remote Content Server is configured and running.

11. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).

The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

12. Use the instructions in [Enabling the Surrogate Get method in UNIX distributed configurations, page 133](#) to complete the remote Content Server configuration on UNIX.

# Upgrading Content Server

This chapter describes how to upgrade or reinstall the server from a previous version and how to upgrade your repositories to Content Server 5.3 SP1.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Before you upgrade, page 119](#)
- [Upgrading a distributed configuration, page 120](#)
- [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host, page 122](#)
- [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository, page 126](#)

The *Documentum System Migration Guide* contains additional information on migrating your installation from a previous version of Documentum to Documentum 5.

## Before you upgrade

Before upgrading Content Server, review the Content Server Release Notes, [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#), and [Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation](#).

If you are installing the full-text indexing components, review the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*, and decide whether you are performing a pre-upgrade or post-upgrade migration to the new full-text indexing system.

You can upgrade to Content Server 5.3 SP1 *only* from Content Server 5.2.5 (including Service Pack releases) and Content Server 5.3. If you are running a server version earlier than 5.2.5, you must first upgrade to 5.2.5 before you upgrade to 5.3 SP1. Refer to documentation for server 5.2.5 for information on upgrade paths to 5.2.5.

Using dump and load operations to upgrade a repository is not supported. Only in-place upgrade is supported.

If you have Apache Tomcat or another application server on the Content Server host as a Java method server, stop the application server before you begin the upgrade or

installation. On Windows, ensure that the application server does not start automatically after a host restart.

If you are installing on UNIX or Linux, ensure that you have reviewed the information in [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#) about setting up the required environment variables. For example, a new installation directory must be created and the value of \$DM\_HOME must be changed to point to that directory.

There are two parts to the upgrade procedure: copying the files required for upgrading from the product distribution CD or the Documentum FTP site and upgrading the server and repository.

After upgrading, you cannot revert to previous versions of the server.

The length of time needed to upgrade a repository depends on the size of the repository and can be substantial. You should allow sufficient time for backing up the repository and performing the upgrade.

Before you upgrade, test the upgrade procedure using the instructions in [Creating a repository copy to test an upgrade, page 64](#) and complete the preinstallation and upgrade checklists in [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#).

## Upgrading a distributed configuration

This section describes the overall procedure for upgrading an existing distributed configuration to 5.3 SP1.

### To upgrade a distributed configuration:

1. On the primary host, use the instructions in this chapter to upgrade the server software, connection brokers, and repository.  
The instructions are in [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host, page 122](#) and [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository, page 126](#).
2. On each remote host, install the new server software, using the instructions in [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host, page 122](#).
3. Run the Server Configuration Program, using the instructions in [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository, page 126](#), but cancel the process after step 19.

Do *not* run the repository configuration scripts.

4. Create an acs config object in the repository for the ACS server installed with each remote Content Server.

For example, if there are three remote Content Servers, you must create three acs config objects.



- a. On the remote Content Server host, navigate to \$DM\_HOME/install/admin (UNIX or Linux) or %DM\_HOME%\install\admin (Windows).
- b. Run the dm\_acs\_install.ebs script:

```
dmbasic -f dm_acs_install.ebs -e Install -- repository_name
user_name password acs_name server_config_name Java_
method_server_port acs_protocol
```

The parameters are described in [Table 8-1, page 121](#). The acs config object is created in server config mode and uses the network locations, connection broker projection targets, and stores from the associated server config object. If you need to change the mode to acs config mode, in which you manually set network locations, connection broker projection targets, and stores, use Documentum Administrator to change the mode and create the manual settings.

Do *not* manually modify the new acs config object using the API or DQL.

**Table 8-1. Parameters required by dm\_acs\_install.ebs script**

Parameter	Description and values
repository_name	Name of the repository served by the remote Content Server and its ACS server, where the acs config object is being created
user_name	The user name of a user with Superuser privileges; for example, the installation owner
password	The password for the Superuser account
acs_name	The object name of the acs config object you are creating. This may be any arbitrary name, but the name must be unique among the object names of acs config objects and the server config objects of both the primary Content Server and any remote Content Servers.
server_config_name	The object name of the server config object of the remote Content Server

Parameter	Description and values
Java_method_server_port	The port where the Java method server on the remote server host listens, which was provided during remote server installation
acs_protocol	The communication protocol used by the ACS server. Valid values are http and https.

5. If the remote Content Servers are installed in a different file-system path from the primary server, create new site-specific location objects for locations that are new in the upgraded repository.
  - a. Connect to the repository using Documentum Administrator.
  - b. Create site-specific dm\_dba and auth\_plugin location objects containing the locations on each of the remote sites of the dba directory (\$DOCUMENTUM/dba on UNIX or Linux; %DOCUMENTUM%\dba on Windows) and the authentication plugin.
  - c. In the server config object for the remote server, set the auth\_plugin\_location and dba\_location to the location objects you just created
6. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).

The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

## Upgrading the Server software installation on the host

Use these instructions to upgrade the server software installation on the host.

### To upgrade the software installation:

1. Log in to the host system using the installation owner account.
  - On Windows, use an account that is a member of the local Administrators group.

On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.

- On UNIX and Linux, connect using an account that is a member of the Documentum and installation owner group.

To confirm the account's group membership, type the following at the command prompt:

Solaris:

```
% id -a
```

AIX and HP-UX:

```
% id
```

2. To install from the Documentum FTP site:
  - a. Navigate to the correct product directory.
  - b. Navigate to the server version corresponding to your operating system and database.
3. To install from a CD:
  - a. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  - b. On the CD, navigate to the subfolder corresponding to your operating system and database.
4. Save the compressed distribution file to the Content Server host's hard disk.
5. Navigate to the file's location on the host's hard disk.
6. Extract the file.
  - On Windows, double-click the file.
  - On UNIX and Linux, uncompress and untar the file:

```
% tar xvf filename
```

The following files are extracted from the compressed file:

```
bofcollaborationSetup.jar
bofworkflowSetup.jar
consistency_checker.ebs
dfcoperatingsystemSetup.jar
serveroperatingsystemSetup.jar
serverWinSuiteSetup.exe (Windows) or
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin (UNIX and Linux)
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.jar
tcfSetup.jar
tomcatoperatingsystem4127Setup.jar
```

7. Run the consistency checker and correct any errors if you have not already done so:

```
dmbasic -fconsistency_checker.ebs -eEntry_Point_Register --
repository_name superuser password
```

For more information on the consistency checker, refer to [Running the consistency checker, page 63](#).

8. Disable all jobs.
  - On Windows, disable jobs in all repositories on the host.
  - On UNIX and Linux, disable jobs in all repositories in the installation you are upgrading.
9. Shut down the repositories and connection brokers.
  - a. To shut down the repositories and connection brokers on Windows:
    - i. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**.
    - ii. Select the correct repository and click **Stop**.
    - iii. Click the connection broker tab.
    - iv. Select each connection broker.
    - v. Click **Stop**.
  - b. To shut down the repositories and connection brokers on UNIX or Linux:
    - i. For each repository, run the `dm_shutdown_repository` script, where *repository* is the name of the repository to be stopped.
    - ii. Stop each connection broker using the `dm_stop_connection` broker utility.  
For instructions, refer to Chapter 7, “The Connection Broker,” in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*.
10. Shut down the Java method server’s Tomcat instance.
  - To shut down Tomcat on Windows, stop the service called Documentum Java method server.
  - To shut down Tomcat on UNIX or Linux, run the script `$DM_HOME/tomcat/bin/shutdown.sh`.
11. Start the installation program.
  - On Windows, double-click the file named `serverWinSuiteSetup.exe`.
  - On UNIX and Linux, type

```
% serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin
```

and press Enter, where *operatingsystem* is the operating system on which you are installing.  
A Welcome dialog box is displayed.
12. Click **Next**  
The license agreement dialog box is displayed.
13. Click **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and then click **Next**.

14. To install the DFC developer documentation and, on Windows, the Primary Interop Assembly Installer, select the checkboxes and click **Next**.

Check the Primary Interop Assembly Installer checkbox to request installation of a Microsoft installer package (.msi file) for the DFC primary interop assembly (PIA), or leave the box unchecked if you do not wish to have the package installed. The installer places the installer package for the DFC PIA into the setup subdirectory of the program root.

The installation program collects information about the host and the Documentum installation. The installation program indicates that an earlier version of the server exists on the host and asks if you want to upgrade.

15. Click **Ok**.
16. To enable Trusted Content Services, select the checkbox and type in the Trusted Content Services license key, then click **Next**.
17. To enable Content Services for EMC Centera, select the checkbox and type in the Content Services for EMC Centera license key, then click **Next**.
18. To enable Content Storage Services, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
19. Type the port numbers for the Java method server and click **Next**.

- The first port is the primary port used by the Java method server (Apache Tomcat) for communications with Content Server.

The default port is 9080.

- The second port is the port used for Tomcat administration.

The default port is 9007.

The ports must not be used by another application. They must not be the ports used by Site Caching Services or the index agent, if the index agent is installed on the Content Server host. (For complete information about the index agent, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.)

A panel listing the components to be installed is displayed.

20. Click **Next**.
21. If you are upgrading on UNIX or Linux, you are asked whether to perform the root task, which sets file permissions for the password checking and password changing programs.
  - a. To perform the task, click **Yes**.
  - b. Type the root password and press Enter.

A new window opens.
  - c. Provide the name of the administrator group and press Enter.
  - d. Click **O** and overwrite the files in \$DOCUMENTUM/dba.

The windows closes and you are returned to the main Xterm window to continue installation.

The Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment and Documentum Content Server software are installed.

. An informational dialog box is displayed listing the components to be installed.

22. Click **Next**.

The components are installed.

23. On Windows, choose when to configure the server.

- To configure the server immediately, choose **Configure server now** and click **Next**.
- To configure the server at another time, choose **Configure server later** and click **Next**.

A panel saying that the software has been installed is displayed.

24. On Windows, click **Next**.

25. On Windows, choose whether to restart the host now or later.

The installation is not complete until the host is restarted.

- To restart the host immediately, click **Yes, restart my system** and click **Finish**.  
The host restarts.
- To restart the host at a later time, click **No, restart my system at a later time** and click **Finish**.

Server installation is complete.

## Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository

This section provides instructions for upgrading the connection brokers, Servers, and repositories on the host. Perform this part of the upgrade after you create the installation. On Windows, this part of the upgrade is after the system restarts.

**To upgrade the repository, Content Server, and the connection broker:**

1. Start the configuration program.

- On UNIX and Linux, type these commands:

```
% cd $DM_HOME/install
% dm_launch_server_config_program.sh
```

- On Windows, log in to Windows as the Content Server installation owner.

If the setup process on Windows does not continue automatically, follow these steps:

- a. Restart the host manually.
- b. After the reboot is completed, log in as the Content Server installation owner.
- c. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**.
- d. On the **Utilities** tab, click **Server Configuration**.  
The server configuration program starts.  
A Welcome dialog box is displayed.
2. If you are on Windows, type in the installation owner's password and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies the password.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Choose **Custom Configuration** and click **Next**.
5. Choose whether to upgrade a connection broker, a repository, or both and click **Next**.
  - If you checked **Connection Broker**, the Connection Broker Configuration dialog box is displayed.
  - If you checked **Repository** but not connection broker, the repository Configuration Dialog box is displayed. Skip to [Step 9](#).
6. If you did not enable Trusted Content Services during installation, optionally choose to enable TCS, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
7. If you did not enable Content Services for EMC Centera during installation, optionally choose to enable the feature, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
8. Upgrade a connection broker on the Content Server host.
  - a. Choose **Upgrade an Existing Connection Broker**.
  - b. Select the connection broker to upgrade.  
The configuration program attempts to stop the existing connection broker. If the connection broker is already stopped or if the configuration program is unable to stop the connection broker, a dialog box is displayed stating that there was a failure to stop the connection broker.
  - c. If the error message is displayed, click **Yes** and continue with the upgrade.  
Clicking **No** stops the upgrade. You may also verify whether the connection broker is running and stop it manually before clicking **Yes**.
  - d. Click **Next**.  
The connection broker is upgraded.
  - e. Choose whether to upgrade additional connection brokers on the local host or continue with server configuration.
  - f. If you are upgrading additional connection brokers, perform steps a-d as required.

- g. Click **Next**.

The Repository Configuration dialog box is displayed.

9. Choose **Upgrade Existing Repository**, select the repository, and click **Next**.
10. To enable Content Storage Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
11. To enable Collaborative Services or Collaborative Services with Rooms in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.
12. To enable Retention Policy Services in the repository, select the checkbox and type in the license key, then click **Next**.

The configuration program attempts to stop the existing repository. If the repository is already stopped or if the configuration program is unable to stop the repository, a dialog box is displayed stating that there was a failure to stop the repository.

13. If the error message is displayed, click **Yes** and continue with the upgrade.  
Clicking **No** stops the upgrade. You may also verify whether the repository is running and stop it manually before clicking **Yes**.
14. Provide connection information for the connection broker to which the repository projects.
  - a. Type the connection broker port number.  
The port number is the port where the connection broker listens. The default is 1489.
  - b. Type the connection broker host name.
  - c. To test the server's ability to connect to the connection broker, check **Test Connection Broker**.
  - d. Click **Next**.

15. Choose the mode in which clients connect to the repository.
  - Click **Native** for unsecure connections
  - Click **Secure** for secure connections
  - Click **Native and Secure** if clients can use either connection mode
16. Choose whether to accept or modify the server.ini and webcache.ini files.

In general, this is not necessary.

- To edit the server.ini file, select **Server Initialization File** and click **Edit**.
- To edit the webcache.ini file, select **Site Caching Services Initialization File** and click **Edit**.
- To accept the files, or after you edit either or both of the files, click **Next**.

The repository service starts.

17. If you are installing on Windows, provide SMTP server information.



The SMTP server is used to send email notifications to the installation owner and repository users.

- a. Type the name or IP address of a computer on your network that hosts an SMTP Server.

The computer can be a remote host or the computer hosting Content Server. All UNIX operating systems and Windows 2000 Server include an SMTP server.

- b. Type the installation owner's email address.
- c. Click **Next**.

If the configuration program cannot connect with the SMTP server, a warning message is displayed. Provide a valid host name or address for the SMTP server or ignore the warning and proceed with the installation.

18. To use the current repository as the global registry repository, select **Use this Repository** and click **Next**.

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Accept the user login name of the global registry user or type in a new user login name.
- b. Type the global registry user's password.
- c. Confirm the global registry user's password and click **Next**.

19. To use a different repository as the global registry repository, select **Specify a Different Repository** and click **Next**

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Type the repository name.  
The repository must be known to the connection broker you specified during DFC installation.
- b. Type the user login name of the global registry user for the repository.
- c. Type the global registry user's password.

20. To designate the global registry repository at a different time, select **Do Later** and click **Next**.

21. Choose whether to accept or modify the repository configuration scripts.

In general, you do not need to edit these scripts.

- To accept the scripts, click **Next**.

- To edit a script, select it and click **Edit**. After you edit and save the scripts, click **Next**.

The scripts run and the repository is configured.

22. Choose whether to configure additional repositories on the host.

- To configure additional repositories, select the checkbox and click **Next**, then skip back to [Step 9](#).
- To continue, click **Exit from server configuration** and click **Next**.

23. Click **Finish**.

The upgrade process is complete.

24. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).

The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

25. If you created new full-text indexes before upgrading the server, perform these tasks using the instructions in the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*:

- a. Shut down the existing index agent, which is migration mode.
- b. Convert the index agent to normal mode using the Index Agent Administration Tool.

26. To create the new indexes after upgrading the server and repository, use the instructions in the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

## Postinstallation Tasks

This chapter describes what to do before users can begin working with a repository. It includes information about both required and optional activities.

This chapter contains the following major topics:

- [Reviewing the server installation logs, page 131](#)
- [Enabling a repository as a global registry, page 132](#)
- [Enabling the Surrogate Get method in UNIX distributed configurations, page 133](#)
- [Running dm\\_root\\_task manually on UNIX or Linux systems, page 134](#)
- [SMTP server on Windows, page 134](#)
- [Changing the default passphrase, page 134](#)
- [Administrative tool script, page 135](#)
- [Starting and stopping Content Servers and connection brokers, page 135](#)
- [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#)
- [Adding users and groups to a repository, page 137](#)
- [Enabling jobs after installation , page 138](#)
- [Changing the installation owner account , page 139](#)
- [The assume user and change password programs, page 139](#)
- [Backing up key store files, page 140](#)
- [Creating additional repositories or connection brokers, page 140](#)

## Reviewing the server installation logs

The Content Server installer and configuration program both create log files.

The log files may be stored in:

1. The current working directory.

For the configuration program, this is typically \$DM\_HOME/install (UNIX) or %DM\_HOME%\install (Windows). For the installer, this is the location from which you run the installer, if the installation owner is able to write to that location. (For example, if the installer is run from a CD, the installation location is not writable.)

2. The parent directory of the installation location, if the installation owner does not have write permission on the current working directory or if the location is not writable
3. The user's home directory, if the installation owner does not have write permission on the parent directory or if the location is not writable

The file names are *installation\_owner\_username*.ServerInstaller.log and *installation\_owner\_username*.ServerConfigurator.log.

Each script that runs during repository configuration creates a log file. These are stored in the \$DOCUMENTUM/dba/config/*repository\_name* directory.

Content Server stores other log files in the \$DOCUMENTUM/dba/log directory. After you install or upgrade the server, examine the log file for the repository for error reports. The log is called *repository\_name*.log.save.*date.time*, where *repository\_name* is the name of the repository you created or upgraded, and *date* and *time* are the date and time the log was saved.

Another log file is \$DM\_HOME/install/SetupError.log, which contains information on the operating system environment, the server version, Java environment, and hardware.

## Enabling a repository as a global registry

To enable a repository as a global registry after configuration, you must activate the dm\_bof\_registry user.

### To enable a repository as a global registry:

1. Access Documentum Administrator in a browser and connect to the repository.
2. Click **Administration**→**User Management**→**Users**.
3. Locate the user named dm\_bof\_registry and click the Information icon.
4. Verify that the user name attribute is set to dm\_bof\_registry.  
The value dm\_bof\_registry is required.
5. Optionally, change the user login name to a new value.
6. Change the user's password.
7. Set the dm\_bof\_registry user's status to **Active**.

8. Click **Ok** to save the user.
9. During DFC installation on client machines, such as the Webtop or Documentum Administrator hosts, provide the user login name and password.  
This updates the `dfc.properties` file and enables that DFC installation to contact the global registry as required.
10. To manually modify the `dfc.properties` file to designate a global registry repository and user credentials:
  - a. On the DFC host, navigate to `$DOCUMENTUM/config` (UNIX or Linux) or `%DOCUMENTUM%\config` (Windows).
  - b. From a command prompt, execute the following command to generate the encrypted form of the global registry user's password:  

```
java -cp dfc.jar com.documentum.fc.tools.RegistryPasswordUtils
password_of_user
```

 where *password\_of\_user* is the global registry user's clear-text password. In step d below, you will need to enter the encrypted form of this password in the `dfc.properties` file.
  - c. Open the `dfc.properties` file in a text editor.
  - d. Modify the following attributes:  

```
dfc.bof.registry.repository=global_registry_repository_name
dfc.bof.registry.username=user_login_name
dfc.bof.registry.password=encryped_password_of_user
```

 where *encryped\_password\_of\_user* is the encrypted password you generated in step b above.
  - e. Save the `dfc.properties` file.

## Enabling the Surrogate Get method in UNIX distributed configurations

In UNIX distributed configurations, after installing any remote Content Servers and adding the file stores at the remote sites to the distributed store, use Documentum Administrator to set the get method for each component of the distributed store to Surrogate Get.

## Running dm\_root\_task manually on UNIX or Linux systems

If `dm_root_task` does not execute correctly during Content Server installation, the file permissions are incorrect on the `dm_check_password` and `dm_change_password` programs, which are required for user authentication. You can run the `dm_root_task` script manually.

**To run the `dm_root_task` manually:**

1. Log in as the root user.
2. Navigate to the `$DOCUMENTUM/dba` directory.
3. Run the task:  

```
dm_root_task
```

The script runs.
4. Type the name of the administrators group and press return.  
The permissions on the files are changed.

## SMTP server on Windows

If you did not supply a valid SMTP server host name during installation, use IDQL or Documentum Administrator to add a valid SMTP server host name to the `smtp_server` attribute of the server config object. Reinitialize the server after you update the server config object.

## Changing the default passphrase

During Content Server installation, a keystore is created containing a passphrase that is used for encryption. After installation, we recommend changing the default passphrase to a custom passphrase. For instructions and more information on encryption, keystores, and passphrases, refer to Chapter 12, Protecting Repository Objects, in the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

If you create a custom passphrase after server installation, any time you restart the server host you must run the `dm_crypto_boot` utility. For more information on this utility, refer to Chapter 12, Protecting Repository Objects, in the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Administrative tool script

During repository configuration, if the administrative tool script does not run properly and you see an error message, you can run it manually using the steps below.

**To complete the installation and run the administrative tool script:**

1. Click OK to close the error message.
2. On the dialog box, uncheck the **Run Script Again** box and click **Next**.
3. Complete the installation.
4. Run this command, substituting the path to \$DOCUMENTUM for \$DOCUMENTUM, the name of your repository for *repository\_name*, and the database connection string for *database\_connection\_string*:

```
dmbasic -f$DOCUMENTUM\product\5.3\install\admin\toolset.ebs
-P repository_name $DOCUMENTUM\product\5.3\install\admin
database_connection_string -e ToolSetup
```

For example, if the path to \$DOCUMENTUM is c:\Documentum, the repository name is TestArepository, and the database connection string is tweezer.documentum.com:

```
dmbasic
-f c:\DOCUMENTUM\product\5.3\install\admin\toolset.ebs -P TestArepository
c:\DOCUMENTUM\product\5.3\install\admin tweezer.documentum.com -e ToolSetup
```

## Starting and stopping Content Servers and connection brokers

If an index agent and index server are running against a particular repository, start the software components in this order:

1. Start the Content Servers.
2. Start the index server.
3. Start the index agent.

Shut down the software in this order:

1. Shut down the index agent.
2. Shut down the index server.
3. Shut down the Content Servers.

On Windows systems, start and stop servers and connection brokers from the Server Manager tool. To access the tool, click **Start**→**Programs**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**. On the correct tab, select the repository or connection broker and click **Start** or **Stop**. You can also launch the server configuration program from Server Manager and use it to create additional repositories or connection brokers in the installation, uninstall existing repositories or connection brokers, and modify the existing repositories.

On UNIX and Linux systems, start servers with the `dm_start_serverconfigname` script, where *serverconfigname* is the object name of the particular Content Server's server config object. To stop servers, use the `dm_shutdown_serverconfigname` script. Both scripts are located in the `$DOCUMENTUM/dba` directory.

If you create a custom passphrase after server installation, any time you restart the server host you must run the `dm_crypto_boot` utility. For more information on this utility, refer to Chapter 12, "Protecting Repository Objects," in the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Starting and stopping the Java method server

Apache Tomcat, in which the Java method server and ACS server run, is installed when a Content Server installation is created. Tomcat does not start automatically after installation except on a Windows host that restarts after installation. You must manually start the Java method server on UNIX and Linux host and on any Windows host that does not restart after installation.

Use these instructions for starting and stopping Tomcat.

For complete information on running Java methods with Tomcat, refer to the "Application Server" section of Chapter 4, "Methods and Jobs," in the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

### On Windows

On Windows, Tomcat is installed and runs as a service. It is installed with the startup property set to Automatic.

#### To start Apache Tomcat:

1. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Administrative Tools**→**Services**.
2. On the Services dialog box, scroll to Documentum Java method server.
3. Right-click Documentum Java method server.
4. Click **Start**.



5. Close the Services dialog box.

**To stop Apache Tomcat:**

1. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Administrative Tools**→**Services**.
2. On the Services dialog box, scroll to Documentum Java method server.
3. Right-click Documentum Java method server.
4. Click **Stop**.
5. Close the Services dialog box.

## On UNIX and Linux

On UNIX and Linux, you must use scripts to start and stop Tomcat. It does not start or stop automatically when the host is restarted.

**To start Apache Tomcat:**

1. Connect to the Content Server host as the Documentum installation owner.
2. Navigate to the \$DM\_HOME/tomcat/bin/ directory.
3. Run the startup.sh script.

**To stop Apache Tomcat:**

1. Connect to the Content Server host as the Documentum installation owner.
2. Navigate to the \$DM\_HOME/tomcat/bin/ directory.
3. Run the shutdown.sh script.

## Adding users and groups to a repository

When a repository is created, it contains accounts for the repository owner, installation owner, and several users required for server functionality, but no other users and no groups. The installation owner must add users and groups to the repository. The easiest way to add users and groups is with Documentum Administrator. You can only use Documentum Administrator 5.3 SP1 and up with a 5.3 SP1 repository. For information on installing Documentum Administrator 5.3 SP1, refer to the *WDK and WDK Applications Installation Guide*. For information on creating users and groups, refer to online Help for Documentum Administrator and to the chapter called Users and Groups in the *Content Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Enabling jobs after installation

Jobs are automated tools for performing repository maintenance tasks. When the repository is installed, many jobs are in the inactive state and do not run until the state is changed to active. After you install, review the chapter “Tools and Tracing” in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide* and Documentum Administrator online Help and active jobs as necessary.

See the sections below for more information on these subjects:

- [Update Statistics, page 138](#)
- [Enabling the Purge Audit job, page 138](#)
- [Enabling the Log Purge job, page 138](#)

## Update Statistics

The Update Statistics tool (dm\_UpdateStats) generates current statistics for the RDBMS tables.

Generating statistics is always useful, particularly after you perform load operations or if table key values in the underlying RDBMS tables are not normally distributed.

The Update Statistics tool is installed in the active state. It runs once per week. Verify its scheduled run time to ensure that it runs during a time when the repository is not being heavily used, such as Saturday night.

## Enabling the Purge Audit job

The Purge Audit job deletes old audit trail objects from the repository. The job runs as the installation owner. However, when a repository is created, the installation owner is not granted sufficient extended privileges to run the job.

After you create a repository, create a new user with Superuser privileges, connect as that user, and grant the installation owner account PURGE AUDIT extended privileges.

## Enabling the Log Purge job

Content Server, the connection broker, the agent exec process, jobs, lifecycles, and sessions all store reports and logs in the repository and on the server host file system. These reports can take up a considerable amount of space in the repository. The Log

Purge job automates deleting old logs and reports. The Log Purge job is installed in the inactive state and must be activated for each repository after installation.

## Changing the installation owner account

By default, the user account from which you install Content Server becomes the installation owner. After installing Content Server and configuring the repositories, you may want to identify a different account as the installation owner.

### To change the installation owner:

1. Create a new user to replace the current installation owner.  
For information about creating users, refer to online Help for Documentum Administrator.
2. on UNIX or Linux, set the required environment variables in the new installation owner's environment.  
Refer to [UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48](#) for information on this.
3. Log in using the *current installation owner* account.
4. Stop all repositories on the host.
5. Stop all connection brokers on the host.
6. Set the appropriate value for the new installation owner by editing the value of `install_owner` in the `server.ini` file, which is located at `$DOCUMENTUM/dba/config/repository_name/server.ini`:  

```
install_owner=new_dmadmin
```
7. Change the permissions in the data, dba, product, full-text, and share subdirectories of the DOCUMENTUM installation root directory.

## The assume user and change password programs

The assume user and change password programs are two programs that Documentum provides and implements by default for your installation.

## Assume user

The assume user program is called whenever a client (end user or application) executes a DO\_METHOD function for a procedure for which the run\_as\_server attribute is set to FALSE. When the procedure is executed (and the server knows where to find the assume user program), the server runs the procedure as the logged-in user. If the server cannot find the assume user program because assume\_user\_location is set to null, or if the run\_as\_server attribute is set to TRUE, the procedure executes under the server's account.

This feature is enabled by default. The Setup program copies the assume user program to the \$DOCUMENTUM/dba directory and sets the assume\_user\_location attribute of the server config object to this location.

If you want to disable this feature, set the assume\_user\_location attribute in the server config object to blank and reinitialize the server. Refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide* for instructions about changing the server's configuration.

## Change Password

Change password is called whenever the server receives a request to change a password.

This program is copied by the Setup program to \$DOCUMENTUM/dba. The installation script also sets the change\_password\_location attribute of the server config object to point to the file in \$DOCUMENTUM/dba.

If you want to disable this capability, set the change\_password\_location attribute to blank and reinitialize the server. Refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide* for instructions on changing a server's configuration.

## Backing up key store files

After you install the Server and repository, back up the key store files. These are all files in \$DOCUMENTUM/dba/secure.

## Creating additional repositories or connection brokers

To create additional repositories or connection brokers in a particular Content Server installation on Windows, use the Documentum Server Manager

(**Start→Programs→Documentum→Documentum Server Manager**). On the **Utilities** tab, click **Server Configuration Program**, then use the instructions in [Configuring the Server and repository, page 95](#) for express configuration or in [Configuring the Server and repository , page 105](#) for custom configuration to create new repositories or connection brokers.

On UNIX or Linux, start the Server configuration program



# Uninstalling Content Server

This chapter explains how to delete a repository or connection broker and how to remove an existing server installation. Do not remove an existing installation to upgrade to a new Documentum release, because all upgrades are in-place upgrades. Use the procedures in this chapter *only* if you want to remove an existing server, a repository and its contents, a connection broker, or a server software installation.

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Requirements, page 143](#)
- [Order of uninstalling, page 143](#)
- [Deleting a remote Content Server, page 144](#)
- [Deleting a repository, page 145](#)
- [Deleting a connection broker, page 146](#)
- [Uninstalling a Content Server software installation, page 147](#)

## Requirements

To delete a repository or connection broker or uninstall Content Server, you must:

- Be able to log in as the Documentum installation owner
- Have sufficient RDBMS privileges to drop tablespaces or databases

## Order of uninstalling

You must use a particular order to uninstall Content Server, a repository, the index agent, and the index server.

To uninstall an index agent, the repository it serves must be running. To uninstall an index server, the repository must be shut down. If the index server is on the

Content Server host, additional issues arise because of shared libraries in the software installations.

Uninstall the software components in this order:

1. Shut down and uninstall the index agent.
2. Shut down the repository.
3. Shut down and uninstall the index server.
4. Delete the repository, if required.
5. Uninstall the Content Server software, if required.
6. Uninstall the Index Agent Configuration Program, if required.

## Deleting a remote Content Server

Use these instructions to delete a remote Content Server and its software installation in a distributed content environment. These instructions only delete the remote server. They do not delete the repository or affect the primary Content Server for the repository.

To delete the server, you must be able to log in as the Documentum installation owner. On Windows, do not use the server manager program to uninstall the server. It launches the configuration program for primary Content Servers, not remote Content Servers.

Before you delete the software installation, you must also delete any connection brokers on the host. Use the instructions in [Deleting a connection broker](#), page 146.

### To delete a remote Content Server:

1. Log in to the host as the Content Server installation owner.
2. Navigate to the \$DM\_HOME/install directory (UNIX or Linux) or %DM\_HOME%\install folder (Windows).
3. Start the remote Content Server configuration program.
  - On Windows, double-click cfsConfigurationProgram.exe.
  - On UNIX or Linux, navigate to \$DM\_HOME/install and type:  

```
%dm_launch_cfs_server_config_program.sh
```

A Welcome dialog box is displayed.
4. Click **Next**.
5. On Windows, type in the installation owner's password and click **Next**.
6. Select **Delete Content-File Server** and click **Next**.
7. Type the installation owner's name and password and click **Next**.



The service is deleted.

8. Click **Finish**.

**To delete the server software installation from the remote host:**

1. Navigate to \$DOCUMENTUM/\_uninst/Server (UNIX or Linux) or %Documentum%\\_uninst\Server (Windows)
2. Run the server uninstaller:
  - On Windows, double-click uninstall.exe.
  - On UNIX, type:  
`uninstaller.bin.`

## Deleting a repository

Use these instructions to delete a repository.

To delete a repository you must:

- Be able to log in as the Documentum installation owner
- Have sufficient RDBMS privileges to drop tablespaces or databases.

**To delete a repository:**

1. Log in to the host as the Content Server installation owner.
2. Start the Server configuration program.
  - On Windows, click **Start**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**, select the repository, and click **Delete**.
  - On UNIX and Linux, navigate to the \$DM\_HOME/install directory and run the `Server_Configuration_Program.bin` program.

The Server configuration program starts.

3. Click **Next**.
4. On Windows, provide the installation owner password and click **Next**.
5. Choose **Custom Installation** and click **Next**.
6. Choose **Create New, Upgrade, or Delete Repositories** and click **Next**.
7. Choose **Delete an Existing Repository**, select the repository to delete, and click **Next**.  
You are asked if you want to delete the component.
8. Click **OK**.

The installer stops the repository and provides the location of the tablespace or database deletion script.

This is `$DOCUMENTUM/server_uninstall/delete_db/repository_name`, where *repository\_name* is the name of the repository.

9. Click **Ok**.
10. Indicate whether to configure another repository or exit from the configuration program and click **Next**.  
An information dialog box is displayed.
11. Click **Finish**.
12. From the RDBMS, drop the database tables associated with the repository.

## Deleting a connection broker

Use these instructions to delete a connection broker.

To delete a connection broker, you must be able to log in to Windows as the Documentum installation owner.

### To delete a connection broker:

1. Connect to the host as the Content Server installation owner.
2. Start the Server configuration program.
  - On Windows, click **Start**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**→**Connection Broker**, select the connection broker, and click **Delete**.
  - On UNIX and Linux, navigate to the `$DM_HOME/install` directory and run the `Server_Configuration_Program.bin` program.
3. Click **Next**.
4. On Windows, provide the installation owner password and click **Next**.
5. Choose **Custom Installation** and click **Next**.
6. Choose **Create New, Upgrade, or Delete Connection Brokers** and click **Next**.
7. Choose **Delete an Existing Connection Broker**, select the connection broker to delete, and click **Next**.  
You are asked if you want to delete the component.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Indicate whether to configure another connection broker or exit from the configuration program and click **Next**.  
An information dialog box is displayed.
10. Click **Finish**.

# Uninstalling a Content Server software installation

Use these instructions to uninstall the Content Server software from a host. You can only uninstall the software after deleting all of the repositories and connection brokers in the installation. Use the instructions in [Deleting a repository, page 145](#) and [Deleting a connection broker, page 146](#) to delete the repositories and connection brokers.

## To uninstall the server software:

1. Delete all repositories and connection brokers in the installation.  
Use the instructions in [Deleting a repository, page 145](#) and [Deleting a connection broker, page 146](#).
2. On Windows:
  - a. Click **Start**→**Settings** →**Control Panel**→**Add/Remove Programs**.
  - b. Select **Content Server** and click **Remove**.
  - c. Optionally, remove the DFC Runtime Environment.  
Refer to the documentation for DFC for instruction on how to uninstall it. If you install a new version of Content Server, the correct version of DFC is installed.
3. On UNIX and Linux:
  - a. Navigate to the \$DOCUMENTUM/\_uninst/Server directory.
  - b. Run the server uninstaller:  
`uninstaller.bin.`
  - c. Optionally, navigate to \$DOCUMENTUM\_SHARED/\_uninst/dfc and remove the DFC Runtime Environment:  
`uninstall.bin`  
  
Refer to the documentation for DFC for complete instructions on how to uninstall.



## Preinstallation Checklists

Use these checklists to ensure that you have all required information and have performed all required tasks before you install or upgrade the server. There are checklists for Content Server installation and for database installation and configuration.

- [Content Server checklists, page 149](#), including:
  - [Preinstallation checklist, page 150](#)
  - [Preupgrade checklist, page 152](#)
  - [Content Server installation checklist, page 154](#)
  - [New repository creation checklist, page 155](#)
  - [Full-text indexing checklist, page 156](#)
  - [Repository upgrade checklist, page 158](#)
  - [Connection broker configuration checklist, page 159](#)
- [Database checklists, page 159](#), including:
  - [Oracle checklist, page 160](#)
  - [SQL Server checklist, page 160](#)
  - [Sybase checklist, page 162](#)
  - [DB2 checklist, page 162](#)

## Content Server checklists

Review these checklists before you install or upgrade Documentum Content Server.

## Preinstallation checklist

Before you install Content Server or configure a repository™, complete the following tasks:

**Table A-1. Preinstallation tasks**

Requirement	For More Information	Completed?
Review the <i>Content Server Release Notes</i> for the server release you are installing or upgrading.	The current release notes are on the server products CD in PDF format and on the FTP site.	
Validate your hardware configuration	<i>Content Server Release Notes</i>	
Validate your operating system	<i>Content Server Release Notes</i>	
Validate your operating system-database combination	<i>Content Server Release Notes</i>	
Ensure that the server host's video card uses a minimum of 256 colors.	Documentation for the host computer	
On UNIX and Linux hosts, ensure that at least 2 MB of shared memory is allocated and that semaphores are enabled.	<a href="#">Shared memory and semaphore requirements, page 51</a>	
For new installations, ensure that the RDBMS is installed and running properly.	<a href="#">Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation.</a>  If you are upgrading a repository, refer to <a href="#">Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server</a> , for information on the database code page.	
For an upgrade, review any special database requirements	<a href="#">Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server</a>	

Requirement	For More Information	Completed?
If you are installing on Oracle or DB2, decide whether to configure the database for improved performance. Note that this must be done <i>before</i> Content Server is started.	<a href="#">System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2, page 72 and Appendix F, Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables</a>	
Decide whether to install a small, medium, or large repository.	<a href="#">Repository size, page 29</a>	
On Windows, obtain the name of the host where the SMTP server is located that the Server will use for email notifications.	<a href="#">Other required software, page 22</a> <a href="#">Documentation for Windows 2000</a>	
Decide whether to use the express or custom configuration option.	<a href="#">Express or custom configuration, page 28</a>	
Decide whether to install a distributed configuration.	<a href="#">Installing a distributed configuration, page 30 and the <i>Documentum Distributed Configuration Guide</i></a>	
Decide whether to use a Lightweight Delivery Access Protocol (LDAP) directory server.	<a href="#">Appendix C, "Using an LDAP Directory Server," in the <i>Content Server Administrator's Guide</i> and <i>Content Server Release Notes</i></a>	
Decide whether to enable Trusted Content Services	<a href="#">Trusted Content Services, page 33</a>	
Decide whether to enable Content Services for EMC Centera	<a href="#">Content Services for EMC Centera, page 33</a>	
Decide whether to enable Content Storage Services	<a href="#">Content Storage Services, page 34</a>	
Decide whether to enable Content Collaborative Services	<a href="#">Collaborative Edition, page 34</a>	
Decide whether to enable Retention Policy Services	<a href="#">Retention Policy Services, page 35</a>	

Requirement	For More Information	Completed?
Decide the names of any new repositories you are configuring.	<a href="#">Repository name and ID, page 35</a>	
Decide whether to create the repository owner account and database storage areas manually or allow the installer to create them.	Review the section on the repository owner in <a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> or <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a> ; consult your database administrator.	
Create any necessary accounts and groups on the operating system and in the database.	<a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> and <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, create any required services file entries. .	<a href="#">Setting up the services file, page 55</a>	
Ensure that Java is installed on the Content Server host.	Refer to the <i>Content Server Release Notes</i> and <i>DFC Release Notes</i> for information about the required Java version.	
Review the Documentum-specific information for your database.	<a href="#">Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation and Database checklists, page 159</a>	
If you are installing a distributed configuration, ensure that all computers in the configuration are set to the same UTC time.	Refer to documentation for the computer systems.	

## Preupgrade checklist

If you are upgrading a repository, review this additional checklist:



**Table A-2. Preupgrade checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Review the <i>Documentum System Migration Guide</i> .	<i>Documentum System Migration Guide</i> .	
Back up the repository.	<i>Documentum Content Server Administrator's Guide</i>	
Decide whether to enable Trusted Content Services	<a href="#">Trusted Content Services, page 33</a>	
Decide whether to enable Content Services for EMC Centera	<a href="#">Content Services for EMC Centera, page 33</a>	
Decide whether to enable Content Storage Services	<a href="#">Content Storage Services, page 34</a>	
Decide whether to enable Content Collaborative Services	<a href="#">Collaborative Edition, page 34</a>	
Temporarily increase the amount of rollback space available in your RDBMS.	Documentation for your database.	
The number of rollback segments should be commensurate with the size of your repository and should be in segments of equal size.		
Ensure that you have sufficient disk space on the computer hosting the database.		
Run the repository consistency checker script and correct any errors you find.	<i>Content Server Administrator's Guide</i> and <a href="#">Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server</a>	
Optionally, migrate the database to UTF-8.	Documentation for your database and <a href="#">Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation</a>	

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Shut down the repository and all servers running against the repository.	<i>Content Server Administrator's Guide</i>	
Shut down any local connection brokers.	<i>Content Server Administrator's Guide</i>	
On Windows, set the service representing the repository you are planning to upgrade to manual rather than automatic.		
On UNIX and Linux, create the new installation directory for the upgraded installation under the \$DOCUMENTUM/product directory (the new \$DM_HOME directory).	<a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, modify the DM_HOME variable in the installation owner's .cshrc or .profile file to point to \$DOCUMENTUM/product/version_number.	<a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, modify the library path variable in the installation owner's .cshrc or .profile file to point to the location of the shared libraries required by the server.	<a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	

## Content Server installation checklist

Before you install the server software on your system, complete the following tasks:

**Table A-3. Installation checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Determine the Documentum installation owner user name and password.	<a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> and <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, optionally create the installation directory	<a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, obtain the root password	This is the operating system root password. The root password is required to complete the installation.	

## New repository creation checklist

Before you create a new repository, complete the following tasks:

**Table A-4. New repository preinstallation checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Determine the Documentum installation owner user name and password	<a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> and <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, obtain the root password		
Choose the repository name	<a href="#">Repository name and ID, page 35</a>	
Choose the repository ID	<a href="#">Repository name and ID, page 35</a>	
Obtain the repository owner name (database user) and password	<a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> and <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
Obtain the database administrator name and password	<a href="#">Database administrator account, page 72</a> and your database administrator	

Task	For More Information	Completed?
On Oracle, set up the networking parameters	<a href="#">Oracle requirements, page 73</a>	
On DB2, obtain database alias name	<a href="#">DB2 requirements, page 81</a>	
Create an estimate of your repository size (small, medium, or large)	<a href="#">Repository size, page 29</a>	
On SQL Server, determine the data file size you need	This information is required if the server Setup program creates the SQL Server account.	
On SQL Server, determine the log file size you need	This information is required if the server Setup program creates the SQL Server account.	
On Windows, determine the Windows domain where Documentum users are authenticated	Windows only. This domain is the default domain if users do not specify a Windows domain when they connect. Choose the domain with the largest number of users.	
Determine the port numbers to be used by the repository and connection broker	The default connection broker port is 1489. For information on port numbers under UNIX, refer to <a href="#">Setting up the services file, page 55</a> .	

## Full-text indexing checklist

Before installing a new server and repository or upgrading an existing repository, complete the following checklist, which contains a list of tasks that must be performed in order to prepare for implementing full-text indexing. For more information, refer to the *Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide*.

**Table A-5. Checklist for full-text indexing**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Determine whether to install the index agent and index server on the Content Server host or remotely		
Determine the port numbers the index agent uses		
Determine the base port the index server uses		
Ensure that 4,000 ports above the base port number are unused and available for index server (for example, if the base port number is 3,000, port numbers from 3,000 to 7,000 must be available)		
Determine the user account(s) to use for installing the index agent and index server		
Ensure that the user accounts are set up	Network administrators	
For a Content Server upgrade, decide whether to migrate the indexes before or after the server and repository are upgraded		
Determine where the full-text indexes are to be created and stored		
Ensure that any additional hosts required by the index agent and index server are configured		

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Mount the drive where the content files are located to make the content accessible to the index server(s)	Documentation from the hardware and operating system vendors	
Determine for which languages to require grammatical normalization		
After new indexes are created as part of an upgrade, verify that the new indexes are functioning correctly	<i>Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide</i>	

## Repository upgrade checklist

Before you upgrade a repository, perform the following tasks and review information in [Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server](#).

**Table A-6. Preinstallation checklist for upgrading a repository**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Determine the Documentum installation owner user name and password	<a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> and <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
On UNIX and Linux, determine the root password	On UNIX and Linux only. This is the operating system root password. The root password is required to complete the upgrade.	
Determine the names of the repositories you are upgrading		
Determine the Documentum version from which you are upgrading		

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Determine whether to enable Content Server features that may not be enabled in the repository, such as Retention Policy Services, Collaborative Services, Trusted Content Services, and Content Storage Services.		
Determine which full-text indexing configuration to use.	<i>Content Server Full-Text Indexing Installation Guide</i>	

## Connection broker configuration checklist

Before configuring a connection broker, perform the following tasks:

**Table A-7. Connection broker configuration preinstallation checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Determine the host name where the connection broker will run		
Determine the Documentum installation owner name and password	<a href="#">Windows host preparation, page 41</a> and <a href="#">UNIX and Linux host preparation, page 48</a>	
Determine the port number the connection broker will use		

## Database checklists

Review the checklist for your relational database management system before you install and configure the repository's database.

## Oracle checklist

Review this checklist when you configure Oracle.

**Table A-8. Oracle preinstallation checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
For new Oracle installations, install the instance with the UTF-8 code page.	Oracle documentation	
Determine whether to migrate an existing Oracle instance to UTF-8.	Oracle documentation	
Ensure that the database aliases are in the tnsnames.ora file on the Content Server host.	Oracle documentation and <a href="#">Oracle database aliases, page 74</a>	
Ensure that the Oracle Listener is running on the Oracle host.	Oracle documentation	
Ensure that the Oracle optimizer meets Documentum recommendations.	<a href="#">Oracle optimization, page 74</a>	
Decide whether to configure the database for improved performance.	<a href="#">System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2, page 72</a>	

## SQL Server checklist

Review this checklist when you configure SQL Server.



**Table A-9. SQL Server checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Configure ODBC.	<a href="#">Configuring an ODBC Data Source for SQL Server, page 76</a>	
Use a full SQL Server installation using the Custom option.	SQL Server documentation	
Ensure that case-sensitivity is enabled in SQL Server.	<a href="#">Configuring SQL Server Case Sensitivity, page 76</a>	
Ensure that the SQL Server sort order is set to Dictionary.		
Ensure that row-level locking is enabled.		
If SQL Server uses Windows authentication, ensure that the installation owner has system administrator privileges in SQL Server.		
Ensure that the Documentum repository owner and installation owner meet the requirements.	<a href="#">SQL Server requirements, page 75</a>	
Install the SQL Server client on the Content Server host.	SQL Server documentation	
If SQL Server is installed remotely, install Microsoft Data Access Components 2.71 on the Content Server host.	SQL Server documentation	
Install SQL Server with case-sensitivity and row-level locking enabled.	SQL Server documentation	
Install SQL Server for internationalization.	<a href="#">SQL Server requirements, page 75</a>	

## Sybase checklist

Review this checklist when you configure Sybase:

**Table A-10. Sybase checklist**

Task	For More Information	Completed?
Install the database with the UTF-8 code page.	<a href="#">Enabling the UTF-8 code page on Sybase, page 79</a>	
In the \$SYBASE/ <i>server_name</i> .cfg file, set the system parameters number of open objects, number of open indexes, and number of locks.	<a href="#">Sybase parameters, page 79</a>	
In a new repository, set the page size to a minimum size of 4 KB or 8 KB. In an upgraded repository, page size may remain at 2 KB but 4 KB or 8 KB is recommended.	Sybase documentation and <a href="#">Setting the Sybase 12.5 page size, page 80</a>	
Ensure that the Sybase version is at least 12.5.	Sybase documentation	
Ensure that the Sybase directory structure is correct.	Sybase documentation and <a href="#">Sybase directory structure, page 81</a>	

## DB2 checklist

Review this checklist when you configure DB2:

**Table A-11. DB2 checklist**

Task	For more information	Completed?
Configure the database to use the UTF-8 code page.	DB2 documentation	

Task	For more information	Completed?
Decide whether to configure the database for improved performance.	<a href="#">System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2, page 72</a>	
Ensure that the DB2 clients are installed on the Content Server host.	DB2 documentation	
Set the required parameters correctly.	<a href="#">Installing and configuring DB2, page 83</a>	
Use the DB2 Performance Wizard for improved performance with Content Server.	<a href="#">Using the Performance Wizard, page 84</a>	
Configure DB2.	<a href="#">Configuring DB2 From the Control Center, page 86</a> or <a href="#">Configuring DB2 From the command line, page 87</a>	



# Required Environment Variables on UNIX and Linux Hosts

If you are installing Content Server on UNIX or Linux, you must set certain environment variables in the installation owner's environment. These are discussed in [Setting up the installation owner account](#), page 52.

If you use the `dm_launch_server_config_program.sh` script to start the server configuration program, all other required environment variables are set automatically, including those required by each database. If you do not use the `dm_launch_server_config_program.sh` script, you must manually set the following additional environment variables:

**Table B-1. Required environment variables**

Environment Variable	Description	Required values
PATH		The path must include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• JAVA_HOME/bin before the following two variables</li><li>• \$DM_HOME/bin</li><li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/dba</li></ul>
JAVA_HOME	Home directory for Java installation on Content Server host	Ensure that \$JAVA_HOME points to the Java version shipped by Documentum, \$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/java/ <i>version_number</i> , where <i>version_number</i> is the correct Java version for your platform and Content Server version. Refer to the Content Server Release

Environment Variable	Description	Required values
CLASSPATH		<p>Notes for the correct version number.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/dctm.jar, which must be first in the CLASSPATH</li> <li>• \$DM_HOME/dctm-server.jar</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/config</li> </ul>
LD_LIBRARY_PATH	Solaris and Linux shared library path	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The DFC location, \$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/dfc</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/lib</li> <li>• \$DM_HOME/bin</li> <li>• To use electronic signatures on PDF documents, \$DM_HOME/fusion</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/fulltext/fast40</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/fulltext/IndexServer/lib</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/share/clients/unix/solaris</li> <li>• Both Solaris and Sybase include a shared library called libintl.so. With Sybase, if you include /usr/lib in the library path, ensure that it is after any Documentum or Sybase directories</li> </ul>

Environment Variable	Description	Required values
SHLIB_PATH	HP-UX shared library path	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The DFC location, \$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/dfc</li> <li>• \$DM_HOME/bin</li> <li>• \$DM_HOME/unix/hpux</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/fulltext/fast40</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/fulltext/IndexServer/lib</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/share/clients/unix/hpux</li> <li>• To use electronic signatures on PDF documents, \$DM_HOME/fusion</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/lib</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/jre/bin/classic</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/PA_RISC2.0/native_thread</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/jre/bin</li> </ul>
LIBPATH	AIX shared library path	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The DFC location, \$DOCUMENTUM_SHARED/dfc</li> <li>• \$DM_HOME/bin</li> <li>• \$DM_HOME/unix/aix</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/lib</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/jre/bin:</li> <li>• \$JAVA_HOME/jre/bin/classic</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/fulltext/fast40</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/fulltext/IndexServer/lib</li> <li>• \$DOCUMENTUM/share/clients/unix/aix</li> <li>• On DB2, \$DB2_BASE/lib</li> </ul>

Environment Variable	Description	Required values
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use electronic signatures on PDF documents, \$DM_HOME/fusion</li> <li>Any directories in the database hierarchy containing libraries you need access to</li> </ul>

The following table lists required environment variables for each relational database management system, which must be set if you do not use the `dm_launch_server_config_program.sh` script:

**Table B-2. Required database environment variables**

Relational database management system	Required environment variables
Oracle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ORACLE_HOME</li> <li>PATH = \$ORACLE_HOME/bin</li> <li>On Solaris, LD_LIBRARY_PATH = \$ORACLE_HOME/lib</li> <li>On HP-UX, SHLIB_PATH = \$ORACLE_HOME/lib</li> <li>On AIX, LIBPATH = \$ORACLE_HOME/lib</li> </ul>
Sybase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SYBASE</li> <li>SYBASE_OCS</li> <li>PATH = \$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_OCS/bin</li> <li>LD_LIBRARY_PATH = \$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_OCS/lib</li> </ul>
DB2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DB2_BASE</li> <li>DB2_HOME</li> <li>DB2_OWNER</li> <li>DB2INSTANCE</li> <li>INSTHOME DB2DIR</li> <li>PATH = \$DB2_BASE/bin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>\$DB2_BASE/adm</li> <li>\$DB2_BASE/misc</li> <li>\$DB2_BASE/lib</li> </ul> </li> <li>CLASSPATH = \$DB2_BASE/bin</li> </ul>



---

Relational database management system	Required environment variables
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— \$DB2_BASE/adm</li><li>— \$DB2_BASE/misc</li><li>— \$DB2_BASE/lib</li><li>• LIBPATH = \$DB2_BASE/bin</li><li>— \$DB2_BASE/adm</li><li>— \$DB2_BASE/lib</li></ul> |
|--|--|



# Troubleshooting Content Server Installation

This appendix contains information for troubleshooting common Content Server installation problems. It contains the following sections:

- [Determining what went wrong, page 171](#)
- [Recovering from a failed repository configuration or upgrade, page 174](#)
- [Enabling tracing in repository configuration scripts, page 175](#)
- [Recovering from a stalled Content Server upgrade, page 176](#)

## Determining what went wrong

Before you proceed:

- Ensure that you are connected as the installation owner.
- On UNIX and Linux, ensure that the environment variables are set correctly in the installation owner's environment.

For complete information, refer to [Setting up the installation owner account, page 52](#).

- Review the server installation logs.

For complete information, refer to [Reviewing the server installation logs, page 131](#).

Use the following table to determine what went wrong from the symptoms.

**Table C-1. Troubleshooting checklist**

Symptom	Cause	Fix
	You are trying to install or upgrade the server but you are not connected as the installation owner.	Connect using the installation owner account.
	The environment variables are not set correctly.	
<p>While installing a repository, you see an error message indicating that the user is not a valid UNIX user:</p> <pre>Configuration of the docbase fails with the message 'user must be a valid unix user' exec(): 0509-036 Cannot load program /u01/app/documentum/product/5.2/bin/dmisvaliduser because of the following errors: 0509-150 Dependent module libldap50.so could not be loaded. 0509-022 Cannot load module libldap50.so. 0509-026 System error: A file or directory in the path name does not exist.</pre>	<p>There are three possible causes of this error:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The installation owner account does not have the installation owner group designated as the user's primary group. Group ownership of the Documentum binaries is incorrect.</li> <li>2. The shared library path environment variable is not set correctly.</li> <li>3. On DB2, the \$DB2_BASE environment variable is not set correctly.</li> </ol>	<p>To fix these three causes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make the installation owner group the installation owner's primary group.</li> <li>2. Set the shared library path environment variable correctly. For complete information on setting environment variables, refer to <a href="#">Setting up the installation owner account, page 52</a>.</li> <li>3. Refer to the documentation for DB2 and to <a href="#">Chapter 4, Preparing the Database for Content Server Installation</a>.</li> </ol>
Server upgrade appears to hang.	There may be a cyclic group.	Refer to <a href="#">Recovering from a stalled Content Server upgrade, page 176</a> .

Symptom	Cause	Fix
<p>On Windows hosts, you see the following error during installation:</p> <pre> Could not initialize interface awt exception ExceptionInitializationError </pre>	<p>The correct video driver for the video card is not installed on the host.</p>	<p>Review the hardware and software configuration of the host.</p>
<p>You see the following error during an upgrade of an older repository:</p> <pre> Failed to retrieve serverconfig object with name &lt;serverconfigname&gt;.  ***Failed to encrypt passwords for docbase ec_epac, status -1057226550 **Operation failed ** [DM_ CRYPTO_E_NO_LOCAL_ COMPONENT_STORE] error: "No local component store for server" Please read error log C:\WINNT\Temp\dm_ chec_bin. ServerConfigurator. log for more information. </pre>	<p>The dm_ContentReplication method has some parameter arguments left over from EDMS98.</p>	<p>Delete the following entry from the dm_ContentReplication method:</p> <pre> serverconfigname [domain\]user,passwd </pre>
<p>You see the following errors during upgrade from 5.2.5 to 5.3 on Oracle 9:</p> <pre> Tue Feb 22 21:48:08 2005 098000 [DM_SESSION_I_ INIT_BEGIN]info: "Initialize </pre>	<p>Invalid Oracle views belonging to types _sv, _sp, _rv, and _rp.</p> <p>A view in Oracle becomes invalid when the base table(s) it references change by altering it (for example, by adding/dropping a</p>	<p>Make the views valid before upgrading Content Server.</p> <p>To determine which views in the Oracle installation are invalid, you can run the following query from SQLPLUS logging in to</p>

Symptom	Cause	Fix
<pre>dmContent." Tue Feb 22 21:48:08 2005 567000 [DM_SESSION_I_ INIT_BEGIN]info: "Initialize dmiSubContent." Tue Feb 22 21:48:08 2005 598000 [DM_TYPE_MGR_E_CANT_ FIND_TABLE]error: "Failure to find table dmi_subcontent_sv as part of fetch of type dmi_subcontent: error from database system is ORA-24372: invalid object for describe" Tue Feb 22 21:48:08 2005 598000 [DM_SESSION_E_INIT_ FAILURE1]error: "Failure to complete dmiSubContent initialization." You might also see this message:  ORA-24372:  invalid object for describe</pre>	<p>column, or dropping a unique constraint index).</p>	<p>as the repository owner. (owner of the tablespace used by documentum):</p> <pre>select object_name, object_type from user_objects where status='INVALID';</pre> <p>To recompile the views:</p> <pre>ALTER VIEW view_name COMPILE;</pre> <p>The Oracle-supplied package named DBMS_UTILITY has a procedure named COMPILE_SCHEMA. This procedure will compile all stored code, views, etc., for the schema provided. The best way to compile all database objects that are invalid is to use a script in the \$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin directory named utlrp.sql. This script finds all objects in the data dictionary that are invalid and compiles them. This script is typically mentioned in patch notes but you can use it any time a schema change occurs. )</p>

## Recovering from a failed repository configuration or upgrade

If repository configuration fails, whether you are upgrading an existing repository or creating a new one, you can recover from the failure.

Typical reasons for a failure include problems with the database connection or errors in server creation. Before you proceed with the following instructions, read the server installation logs and correct any problems. For more information about logs, refer to [Reviewing the server installation logs, page 131](#).

**To recover from a failed installation or upgrade:**

1. Correct any problems noted in the server installation logs.
2. Restart the server configuration program.
3. Choose **Custom installation**.
4. Select the repository where the failure occurred.
5. Check **Upgrade**.

This takes you through the configuration steps again and re-runs the scripts that create the repository.

## Enabling tracing in repository configuration scripts

When the repository configuration scripts fail, it is useful to see the command that was being run at the time of the failure in addition to the information in the output file. You can obtain this information by enabling tracing in the scripts.

**To enable tracing in the repository configuration scripts:**

1. Restart the repository configuration program.
2. Choose custom installation.
3. At the screen where you can modify the configuration scripts, open the problem script for editing.
4. Immediately after the connect call, add the following line to the script:
 

```
sta$ = dmAPIExec("trace,c,4," & "trace_file_name")
```
5. Save the script.
6. Rerun the script.

# Recovering from a stalled Content Server upgrade

A server upgrade that stalls in the middle or takes hours to complete can be caused by *cyclic groups*. A cyclic group is a group where the group itself is a subgroup of a member group, causing the server to cycle during the upgrade.

If the server has encountered a cyclic group, the last line of the server log is:

```
Thu Aug 7 14:00:14 2003 715540 [DM_SESSION_I_INIT_BEGIN]info:"Initialize dmGroup."
```

Use the following instructions to identify the cyclic group. After you locate the cyclic group, contact Documentum Technical Support for assistance in correcting the problem, which requires direct SQL statements in the database.

## To identify and correct a cyclic group:

1. From the operating system, stop the server startup.
  - On Windows, open Task Manager, select the correct server process on the Processes tab, and click **End Process**.
  - On UNIX and Linux, determine the correct server process and use the kill command to kill the process.
2. If you are on UNIX or Linux, restart the server using the `-osqltrace` option:
 

```
dm_start_repositoryname -osqltrace
```
3. If you are on Windows, edit the server startup command and then restart the server.
  - a. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**.
  - b. Select the correct repository.
  - c. Click **Edit Service**.
  - d. In the **Command** field, add `-osqltrace` after the repository name.
  - e. Click **Okay**.
  - f. Restart the server.
4. When the server appears to hang, open the server log and identify the query that is looping.

If there is a cyclic group, the last query in the log is recorded multiple times and takes this format:

```
Mon Aug 11 13:33:17 2003 435439: 21547[1]
SELECT SB_.R_OBJECT_ID FROM repository_owner.dm_group_s SB_
WHERE (SB_.R_OBJECT_ID=:objectp AND SB_.I_VSTAMP=:versionp)
Mon Aug 11 13:33:17 2003 435608: 21547[1]:objectp = 1200fb8080000909
Mon Aug 11 13:33:17 2003 435608: 21547[1]:versionp = 0
```



In the above example, the cyclic group has the `r_object_id` of 1200fb8080000909.

5. Run the following query:

```
SELECT group_name
FROM   dm_group_s
WHERE  r_object_id='r_object_id_of_cyclic_group'
```

This query returns the name of the group, which you need for determining which group is the cyclic group.

6. Run the following query:

```
SELECT groups_names
FROM   dm_group_r
WHERE  r_object_id = 'r_object_id_of_cyclic_group'
```

The query returns the names of each group that is a member of the problem group.

7. For each of the group names returned, run this query:

```
SELECT r_object_id from dm_group_s where group_name
= 'member_group_name'
```

The query returns the `r_object_id` for each member group.

8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 iteratively for each subgroup until you locate the cyclic group.
9. Contact Documentum Technical Support for assistance in correcting the problem.



# Content Server Installation Directories and Repository Configuration Scripts

This appendix explains concepts essential for installing the Content Server. The following topics are discussed:

- [Content Server installation file structure, page 179](#)
- [Scripts run during installation or upgrade, page 183](#)
- [Configuration objects, page 185](#)

## Content Server installation file structure

A basic Content Server installation results when you accept all default values offered during the installation procedure.

A server installation consists of a number of files distributed among several directories. Some of these files, such as the executable files, are supplied on your Content Server Installation CD. Others, such as the server startup file, are created during the installation process.

The installation procedure creates `_uninst`, `data`, `dba`, `fulltext`, `product`, `server_uninstall`, and `share` subdirectories in the `$DOCUMENTUM` directory. In the `product` directory, the procedure creates a subdirectory named for the version of the software that you are installing and puts the executable files in subdirectories of that directory. The `share`, `data`, and `dba` directories are populated with the files and subdirectories that fall into those categories.

Each directory contains files and subdirectories necessary for a Documentum installation.

## **\_uninst**

This directory contains the server uninstaller.

## **Data**

The files and directories in this category are the content storage areas and the directories that contain the full-text indexes. These directories must exist and location objects must be defined for them in the repository before you start Content Server. (The installation procedure creates a default storage area and associated location object and a default fulltext index object and associated location object.)

The Data directory contains directories that store the data manipulated by users and Content Server. The installation procedure creates a subdirectory for the repository in the Data directory and in that repository subdirectory, creates a content storage area.

The data includes the full-text indexes and the content files associated with objects in the repositories. The location of these directories is the most flexible component of your configuration.

Most sites will want to add more storage areas and index directories, particularly as the repository grows larger. Refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide* for information and instructions about adding additional storage areas and full-text index storage directories.

## **DBA**

The DBA directory contains the Log and Config directories and several files. The Log directory is where the server places any log files generated by user actions during a session with the server. The server creates any necessary subdirectories for these log files under the Log directory. The Config directory includes a subdirectory for each repository that contains the startup files for the repository and its server.

## **Fulltext**

The Fulltext directory contains the third-party full-text indexing software.

## Product

The Product subdirectory contains the Content Server executables.

## Server\_Uninstall

This directory contains a script that can be run manually to destroy a repository's database tables after you delete the repository.

## Share

The Share directory holds all the files that can be shared by the server and the clients. Clients that connect to the Share directory remotely can receive some performance benefits in file-sharing and event notification. (The client must be using NFS software to receive these benefits. Refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.)

The Share directory has four subdirectories:

- Data

The Data directory contains data that is read and written by the server and the clients. It has two subdirectories, Events and Common. Ensure that these subdirectories can be mounted by clients.

- Events

The Events directory contains a file for any user who has queued inbox items that have not been viewed. The files are empty. They serve as a flag to the server that unviewed items are in that user's inbox.

- Common

The Common directory is where the server puts copies of requested content files if users are not using client local areas and if users do not specify an alternate location for the files.

- Clients

The Clients subdirectory contains the win and unix subdirectories, which respectively contain the files and executables for Windows and UNIX clients.

- Temp

The Temp directory is used by the server as a temporary storage space. For example, results generated by the execution of a procedure using the Apply method's DO\_METHOD function are stored here.

- SDK

The SDK directory contains two subdirectories of files that are useful to software developers. The two subdirectories are:

- Include.

This directory contains the dmapp.h file and the import libraries, among other things.

- Example.

This directory contains code examples.

## Additional directories

The directories that are created during installation are described in [Table D-1, page 182](#)

**Table D-1. Subdirectories created during installation**

Directory	Description
bin	Contains the Content Server software
convert	Contains the transformation engine executable files
example*	Contains code examples
external_apps	Contains a shared library
fusion	Contains files required for electronic signature functionality, a Trusted Content Services feature
include*	Contains header files for any external applications that will communicate with Content Server
install	Contains the installation scripts
messages	*.e files (error messages)
Uniscape	Contains NLS files for server codepage conversions
unix*	Contains the libraries for a UNIX client

Directory	Description
unsupported	Contains executable files that are provided for your convenience but that are not supported by Content Server
webcache	Includes webcache.ini. Refer to documentation for Documentum WebCache for more information.
thumbsrv	Installation directory for Thumbnail Server. Refer to documentation for Documentum Media Services for more information.
win*	Contains the executable files for a Microsoft Windows client. These include IAPI and IDQL for MS Windows and the DDE server and libraries.
* Optional	
tomcat	Contains Apache Tomcat installation files used to create a Tomcat instance for the Java method server.

## Scripts run during installation or upgrade

During repository configuration, the following scripts are run, whether you are installing a new repository or upgrading an existing repository:

- headstart.ebs  
The headstart.ebs script loads the initial default objects for the repository. It creates mount point objects, location objects, filestore objects, and method objects.
- dm\_apply\_formats.ebs  
The dm\_apply\_formats.ebs script creates or updates format objects, which are required for content file operations.
- dm\_routerConv\_install.ebs  
The dm\_routerConv\_install.ebs script is run only during repository upgrades. It loads methods that are used for converting routers to workflow templates.
- templates.ebs  
The templates.ebs script creates default templates that are used by Documentum clients for creating new documents in the repository.
- replicate\_bootstrap.ebs

The `replicate_bootstrap.ebs` script creates objects and registered tables that are required for replication.

- `desktop_client.ebs`

The `desktop_client.ebs` script creates folders required by Documentum Desktop Client and installs the default SmartList.

- `display_config_setup.ebs`

The `display_config_setup.ebs` script configures the repository for the Documentum Offline Client.

- `offline_config_setup.ebs`

The `offline_config_setup.ebs` script migrates offline configuration settings from the `offline_config` object to the repository `config` object.

- `ci_schema_install.ebs`

The `ci_schema_install.ebs` script installs the object types used by Documentum Content Intelligence Services.

- `dfc.ebs`

The `dfc.ebs` script loads default objects required by the Documentum Foundation Classes.

- `toolset.ebs`

The `toolset.ebs` script installs repository administration tools.

- `dm_ldap_install.ebs`

The `dm_ldap_install.ebs` script creates or upgrades the `ldap` object type and upgrades any existing `ldap` objects.

- `dm_xml_install.ebs`

The `dm_xml_install.ebs` script installs object types and formats for XML files.

- `dm_gwm_install.ebs`

The `dm_gwm_install.ebs` script executes scripts that install workflow-related types, methods, folders, and jobs.

- `upgrade_java_methods_51.ebs`

The `upgrade_java_methods_51.ebs` script upgrades existing Java methods.

- `dd_populate.ebs`

The `dd_populate.ebs` script populates the data dictionary with attribute and type information from data files.

- `csec_plugin_upgrade_53.ebs`

The `csec_plugin_upgrade_53.ebs` upgrades the plug-in for using content-addressable storage areas.



- `dm_cas_install.ebs`, which creates a method, location, template type, folder structure, and template object for use in the electronic signature functionality.
- `dm_wfTimer_upgrade.ebs`

The `dm_wfTimer_upgrade.ebs` script, located in the `$DM_HOME/install/admin` directory, converts workflow pre- and post-timers set up in pre-5.3 repositories to the 5.3 SP1 timer implementation. The syntax for running the script is:

```
dmbasic -f dm_wfTimer_upgrade.ebs -e Install --  
repository_nameuserpassword
```

- `create_fulltext_objects.ebs`

The `create_fulltext_objects.ebs` script creates objects related to full-text indexing in the repository.

- `dfc_javadbexpr.ebs`

The `dfc_javadbexpr.ebs` script creates types, relation types, acls, and repository folders for DFC evaluation of validation expression constraints in Java.

- `dfc_bof2.ebs`

The `dfc_bof2.ebs` script creates the types for `dm_module`, `dmc_jar`, and `dmc_java_library` and configures a repository to use DFC 5.3 SP1.

## Configuration objects

In each repository, there are objects that, taken together, define your configuration. These objects include:

- Server config object
- Docbase config object
- Full-text index objects
- Location objects
- Mount point objects
- Storage objects
- Format objects
- Method objects

As you make choices about how you want to configure your installation and repositories, you will modify these objects or add new ones to implement your decisions. Refer to the *Content Server Administrator's Guide* for more information on configuration.

## Object Type Categories for Oracle Database Storage

This appendix lists the object types by their size category. An object type's size category is used in two contexts:

- To determine where to create the object type's tables and indexes if the optional [FUNCTION\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] parameters are defined in the server.ini file
- To determine the default initial and next extent allotments for the object type's tables in the RDBMS

The categories for each context are not exactly the same. Refer to [Type categories for tablespace specifications, page 187](#), to find the categories for tablespace determination and to [Type categories for extent allocation, page 188](#), to see the tables listing the categories for extent allotments t.

For information about setting the default storage parameters, refer to [Appendix F, Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables](#) .

### Type categories for tablespace specifications

By default, the tables and indexes for all object types are created in the same tablespace. However, you can set parameters in the server.ini file to define alternate tablespaces for large and small object types. When you do so, the system sorts the objects into large and small for the purposes of determining which object types to create in which tablespace.

The majority of the object types are considered small for this purpose. The following list shows the object types that are considered large. Any type not appearing on this list is considered small.

dm_acl	dm_process	dmi_dump_object_record
dm_assembly	dm_reference	dmi_linkrecord
dm_audittrail	dm_relation	dmi_load_object_record
dm_composite	dm_router	dmi_otherfile

dm_document	dm_script	dmi_queue_item
dm_folder	dm_smart_list	dmi_replica_record
dm_locator	dm_sysobject	dmr_containment
dm_note	dm_workflow	dmr_content
dm_procedure	dm_workitem	

## Type categories for extent allocation

This section lists object type size categorizations for extent allocation and the default initial and next extent storage parameters for each category.

The object types are categorized as large, small, or default based on how many objects of the type will be created in the repository. For example, `dm_document` is categorized as large because most enterprises create large numbers of documents in a repository. Similarly, `dm_docbase_config` is categorized as small because a repository has only one docbase config object. Those types that don't fall into either the large or small category are categorized as default.

### Object types categorized as large

The object types categorized as large are created with an initial extent size of 100K. The next extent size is 1M. The following object types are categorized as large for the purposes of allocating extents.

dm_acl	dm_reference	dmi_dump_object_record
dm_assembly	dm_relation	dmi_load_object_record
dm_document	dm_router	dmi_object_type
dm_folder	dm_sysobject	dmi_queue_item
dm_locator	dmi_containment	dmi_replica_record
dm_note	dmr_content	dmi_subcontent

## Object types categorized as small

The object types categorized as small are created with an initial extent size of 10K. The next extent size is 50K. The following object types are categorized as small for the purposes of allocating extents.

dm_alias	dm_filestore	dm_relation_type
dm_blobstore	dm_foreign_key	dm_server_config
dm_distributed_store	dm_format	dm_store
dm_dump_record	dm_fulltext_index	dmi_change_record
dm_docbase_config	dm_linkedstore	dmi_expr_code
dm_docbaseid_map	dm_load_record	dmi_recovery
dm_extern_file	dm_location	dmi_session
dm_extern_free	dm_mount_point	dmi_sequence
dm_extern_store	dm_opticalstore	dmi_tdk_collect
dm_extern_url	dm_outputdevice	dmi_tdk_index
dm_federation	dm_registered	dmi_vstamp

## Object types categorized as default

The object types categorized as default are created with an initial extent size of 20K. The next extent size is 100K. The following object types are categorized as default for the purposes of allocating extents.

dm_activity	dm_federation_log	dm_qual_comp
dm_aggr_domain	dm_func_expr	dm_query
dm_application	dm_group	dm_script
dm_app_ref	dm_job	dm_smart_list
dm_audittrail	dm_job_request	dm_staged
dm_builtin_expr	dm_key	dm_type
dm_cabinet	dm_literal_expr	dm_user
dm_cond_expr	dm_method	dm_value_assist
dm_cond_id_expr	dm_nls_dd_info	dm_value_func
dm_component	dm_plugin	dm_value_list

dm_dd_info	dm_policy	dm_value_query
dm_domain	dm_procedure	dm_workflow
dm_expression	dm_process	dm_workitem
dmi_dist_comp_record	dmi_linkrecord	dmi_registry
dm_expr_code	dmi_linkrecord	dmi_transactionlog
dm_expr_code	dmi_package	dmi_type_info

# Defining Oracle or DB2 Database Parameters for Repository Tables

To improve performance and increase the throughput of the system, you may want to control where repository information is stored. For example, you can store frequently used data on different disks than less-frequently used data. Defining database parameters to store data in different tablespaces also partitions data into smaller, more manageable pieces.

When a repository is created, the system automatically creates object-type tables and indexes in the underlying RDBMS. (The object-type tables and indexes are described in *Content Server Fundamentals*.)

By default, Content Server creates all object-type tables and indexes in the same tablespace. The size and number of the extents allotted for each table are determined by default configuration parameters.

You can edit the `server.ini` file to change the default database configuration parameters when the repository is created, before you start the server. To do this, use the instructions in [System performance and database parameters on Oracle and DB2, page 72](#).

On DB2, you can change the tablespace for the object-type tables and indexes. On Oracle, you can change two parameters:

- The tablespace for the object-type tables and indexes
- The size of the extents allotted for system-defined object types

You cannot change the number of extents allotted for the object types.

Under Oracle 9, the default value is `LOCAL`. When the `LOCAL` value is set, users cannot specify an extent size and values you set in the `server.ini` key are ignored by Oracle. If you intend to set the `[TYPE_EXTENT_SIZE]` and `[FUNCTION_EXTENT_SIZE]` parameters in the `server.ini` file, ensure that any new Oracle 9 tablespaces are created using `DICTIONARY` as the value for `extent_management`. Refer to Oracle's documentation for more information on `extent_management`.

## Defining the tablespace

The parameters in the [FUNCTION\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] and [TYPE\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] sections of the server.ini file define the tablespace in which to create the object-type tables and indexes.

### FUNCTION\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE

Set the parameters in the [FUNCTION\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] section to define the tablespace for the type tables and indexes for a particular category of object types. Documentum sorts object types into the categories large and small for the purposes of defining their tablespace. Object types in the large category are those that are expected to have a large number of object instances. For example, dm\_SysObject is in the large category. Object types in the small category are those that are expected to have very few object instances. For example, dm\_docbase\_config is in the small category. Each repository has only one Docbase config object.

The format of the [FUNCTION\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] section is:

```
[FUNCTION_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_table_large=tablespace_name
database_table_small=tablespace_name
database_index_large=tablespace_name
database_index_small=tablespace_name
```

For example, to define a tablespace for the object-type tables in the large category, include the following lines in the server.ini file, substituting the name of the tablespace:

```
[FUNCTION_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_table_large=tablespace_name
```

For example, to put the indexes for the large category in the tablespace named production\_1, include the following lines in the server.ini file:

```
[FUNCTION_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_index_large=production_1
```

You can specify the function-specific parameters singularly or in any combination.

### TYPE\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE

Set the parameters in the [TYPE\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] section in the server.ini file to define a tablespace for the type tables or indexes for a specific object type.

The format of the [TYPE\_SPECIFIC\_STORAGE] section is:

```
[TYPE_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
```



```
database_table_typename=tablespace_name
database_index_typename=tablespace_name
```

You can specify the type-specific parameters individually. For example, to put the object-type tables for the dm\_SysObject type in the tablespace named sysobj\_space, include the following lines in the server.ini file:

```
[TYPE_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_table_dm_sysobject=sysobj_space
```

If you want to put both the tables and indexes for an object type in non-default tablespaces, define the tablespace for each. Defining a tablespace for an object type's tables doesn't affect where the type's indexes are stored. The system creates the indexes in the default tablespace. Defining a tablespace for a type's indexes does not affect where the type's tables are stored.

For example:

```
[TYPE_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_table_dm_sysobject=sysobj_space
database_index_dm_sysobject=sysobj_idx_space
```

The object-type tables and indexes of any object type not specified in a type-specific parameter are created in the default tablespace or, if specified, in the tablespace for the type's category.

If the server.ini file includes both function-specific and type-specific parameters that apply to an object type, the type-specific parameters override the function-specific parameters. For example, suppose you add the following function-specific and type-specific parameters to the file:

```
[FUNCTION_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_index_large=production_1
[TYPE_SPECIFIC_STORAGE]
database_table_dm_sysobject=sysobj_space
```

Both parameters apply to the dm\_SysObject type because dm\_SysObject is in the large category. The object-type tables for dm\_SysObject are created in the sysobj\_space tablespace because the type-specific parameter overrides the function-specific parameter.

## Defining the Oracle extent sizes

For the purposes of extent allocation, the Documentum object types are sorted into three categories: large, small, and default. The category name describes the quantity of expected objects of the type. For example, dm\_document is considered a large type because most enterprises generate large quantities of documents. In contrast, dm\_repository\_config is a small type because there is only one docbase config object in a repository. Those object types that typically do not have large numbers of objects or very small numbers of objects fall into the default category.

A type's category determines how much database storage is allocated to it by default. Object types categorized as:

- Large object type receive an initial extent of 100 KB and a next (second, third, fourth, etc.) extent of 1 MB.
- Small object types receive an initial extent of 10 KB and a next extent of 50 KB.
- Default object types receive an initial extent of 20 KB and a next extent of 100 KB.

The default storage parameters set the initial and next extent sizes. There are also parameters that define the default minimum and maximum number of extents allotted to an object type table and the percentage increase of extents allotted after the second extent. The minimum number of allotted extents is 1 and the maximum number is determined by Oracle, based on the data block size. By default, object-type tables and indexes are allocated the minimum number of extents when they are created.

The percentage increase default is 10%. This means that extents allotted after the second extent are increased in size by 10% over the previously allocated extent. For example, if the second extent's size is 100 KB, then the size of the third extent is 110 KB, 10% greater than 100 KB. The fourth extent would be 121 KB, 10% greater than 110 KB.

You can change the initial and next extent default sizes for an individual object type or for an entire category by setting parameters in the server.ini file before the repository is created.

You can change the next extent parameter, the minimum and maximum extent parameters, and the percentage increase parameter. However, you must do so using the Oracle ALTER TABLE command through sqlplus. Refer to the Oracle documentation for instructions.

## Changing storage parameters for individual object types on Oracle

To change the initial and next extent parameters for an object type, add a [TYPE\_EXTENT\_SIZE] section to the server.ini file. This section has the following format:

```
[TYPE_EXTENT_SIZE]
database_ini_ext_typename=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_typename=new_value[K|M]
```

*typename* must be the internal name of a system-defined object type. It cannot be a user-defined object type. The *database\_ini\_ext\_typename* parameter defines the size of the initial extent allotted to the type. The *database\_next\_ext\_typename* parameter defines the size of the second extent allotted to the type.

*new\_value* is an integer. If you include K, the value is interpreted as Kilobytes. If you include M, the value is interpreted as Megabytes. If you include neither K nor M, the value is interpreted as bytes.

For example, to change the defaults for `dm_sysobject`, add the following lines to the `server.ini` file:

```
[TYPE_EXTENT_SIZE]
database_ini_ext_dm_sysobject=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_dm_sysobject=new_value[K|M]
```

You can set either parameter or both for an object type. The section can include parameter definitions for more than one object type. For example:

```
[TYPE_EXTENT_SIZE]
database_ini_ext_dm_sysobject=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_dm_sysobject=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_dm_user=new_value[K|M]
```

## Changing storage parameters for categories of types on Oracle

To change the initial and next extent parameters for all object types in one category, add a `[FUNCTION_EXTENT_SIZE]` section to the `server.ini` file. This section has the following format:

```
[FUNCTION_EXTENT_SIZE]
database_ini_ext_large=new_value[K|M]
database_ini_ext_small=new_value[K|M]
database_ini_ext_default=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_large=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_small=new_value[K|M]
database_next_ext_default=new_value[K|M]
```

The `database_ini_ext_large` parameter defines the size of the initial extent allotted by default to object types categorized as large. The `database_ini_ext_small` parameter defines the size of the initial extent allotted by default to object types categorized as small. The `database_ini_ext_default` parameter defines the size of the initial extent allotted by default to object types categorized as default.

The `database_next_ext_large` parameter defines the size of the second extent allotted by default to object types categorized as large. The `database_next_ext_small` parameter defines the size of the second extent allotted by default to object types categorized as small. The `database_next_ext_default` parameter defines the size of the second extent allotted by default to object types categorized as default.

*new\_value* is an integer. If you include K, the value is interpreted as Kilobytes. If you include M, the value is interpreted as Megabytes. If you include neither K nor M, the value is interpreted as bytes.

For example, to change the default extent sizes for all large object types, add the following to the `server.ini` file:

```
[FUNCTION_EXTENT_SIZE]
```

```
database_ini_ext_large=new_value[K|M]  
database_next_ext_large=new_value[K|M]
```

You can set any combination of the parameters. It isn't necessary to set the parameters for all three categories. You can also set only one of the parameters for a category. To illustrate, the following example sets the initial extent for objects categorized as large and the next extent for object types categorized as default:

```
[FUNCTION_EXTENT_SIZE]  
database_ini_ext_large=200K  
database_next_ext_default=120K
```

## User-defined object types

A user-defined object type derives its database storage parameters from its supertype. If the type has no supertype, then the type is assigned to the large category for tablespace assignment and to the default category for the extent allocations.

You cannot change the storage parameters for user-defined object types.

On DB2, if you create a tablespace for objects of type `dm_SysObject`, then create a user-defined object type whose supertype is `dm_SysObject`, the user-defined object type is not stored in the tablespace for `dm_SysObject`. It is stored instead in the default tablespace, unless you explicitly define the tablespace for `dm_SysObject` in the `server.ini` file.

# Installing Content Server With Microsoft Cluster Services

This chapter describes how to install and configure Documentum to provide failover support under Microsoft Cluster Services. This chapter contains the following information:

- [Preinstallation requirements, page 197](#)
- [Overview, page 198](#)
- [Choosing a configuration, page 198](#)
- [Configuring an active/passive cluster, page 199](#)
- [Configuring an active/active cluster, page 212](#)
- [Upgrading a repository installed with Cluster Services, page 232](#)

## Preinstallation requirements

Before you install and configure Content Server and a repository under Microsoft Cluster Services, read [Chapter 2, Planning for Content Server Installation](#), [Chapter 3, Preparing for Content Server Installation](#), and perform the preinstallation tasks described there.

Additionally, complete the checklists in [Appendix A, Preinstallation Checklists](#).

The instructions that follow assume that the underlying database is on a different computer from the computer used for Content Server, but the database may reside on the Content Server host computer.

Whether you are configuring an active/passive cluster or an active/active cluster, set up the shared disks to be used by the repositories.

Ensure that the shared disk includes a directory to use for content storage.

If you are configuring an active/active cluster, the user who configures Microsoft Cluster Services must have read and write permissions on both nodes on the directories where the connection broker logs reside.

To use Cluster Services, the repository owner must have an account in the domain in which you install the repository.

Follow the instructions in [Chapter 8, Upgrading Content Server](#), to upgrade to Server 5.2.

Documentum Site Caching Services is not supported in repositories using Cluster Services.

Full-text indexing is not supported for installations on Cluster Services.

## Overview

This chapter provides instructions for setting up two different possible Documentum configurations under Microsoft Cluster Services. In both configurations, two machines, called the first cluster node (or first node) and second cluster node (or second node) are connected to form a cluster. The cluster groups resources, such as virtual IP address, virtual network host names, and shared disks, into resource groups. The connection broker and Content Server are also part of the resource group.

At a particular time, the resource group is owned by one node and can only be accessed by that node.

If one node goes down, the resource group is moved automatically to the node that is still running. The connection broker and server start on the running node and take over from the connection broker and server on the failed node.

## Choosing a configuration

You can install Documentum under Cluster Services in many possible configurations. For example, you might have multiple repositories on one machine, with failover to another machine, or you might have repositories on two machines that fail over to each other.

Two popular configurations are called active/passive and active/active. This chapter provides detailed installation instructions for both configurations.

Choose your configuration based on available hardware and your organization's business needs. In the active/passive configuration, one machine is idle until it is needed for failover.

In an active/passive configuration, the first node is considered the primary node and the second node is considered the standby node. There is one resource group. The repository is stored on the shared disk. The connection broker and Content Server run on the primary node.

**Figure G-1. Active/passive cluster configuration**

### Active/Passive Cluster with One Repository, One Primary Server, One Standby Server

If the primary node fails, the standby node takes ownership of the resource group. After the cluster resources are brought on line on the standby node, the connection broker and Content Server start on the standby mode.

In an active/active configuration, each node is considered the standby to the other node. Each node owns its own resource group. Each resource group has its own virtual IP address, a virtual host name, shared disk, connection broker, repository, and Content Server.

**Figure G-2. Active/active cluster configuration**

### Repositories A and B on Shared Disk

If a node fails, its resource group is moved to the surviving node. The surviving node then manages two resource groups. When the failed node is running again, the cluster administrator can move one resource group back.

## Configuring an active/passive cluster

Follow these procedures to configure an active/passive cluster and install servers and a repository. You must complete all of the procedures in the sections that follow:

- [Creating the cluster resource group, page 200](#)
- [Creating the Server installation on the host, page 200](#)
- [Configuring the repository, page 203](#)
- [Configuring the connection brokers, page 210](#)
- [Creating additional cluster resources, page 211](#)
- [Verifying failover, page 212](#)

## Creating the cluster resource group

Use this procedure to set up the cluster resource group, which contains a virtual IP address, virtual network host name, and shared disk partition.

### To create the cluster resource group:

1. Use the MSCS Cluster Administrator utility to create a cluster resource group containing the following resources:
  - A virtual IP address  
This is the IP address that the server uses. Other products can share the IP address because the connection broker and server only listen on particular ports.
  - A virtual network host name  
This is the virtual host name for the IP address. It should have a dependency with the virtual IP address.
  - A shared disk partition  
This is the location of the repository data directory, where content files are located.
2. Take the resource group on line and move it back and forth between the primary and standby machines.  
This is to ensure that the IP address, virtual network host name, and shared disk partition fail over properly.
  - a. In the Cluster Administrator, right-click the cluster group name.
  - b. Click **Move Group**.  
The resource group is toggled between the machines and the owner name changes.
3. Ensure that the first node owns the resource cluster group.

## Creating the Server installation on the host

The first part of the installation process copies files from the installation media to your hard disk. Follow these instructions regardless of your RDBMS.

On each of the two nodes, copy the files from the installation media to create a Content Server installation on each node.

Use the same drive on each node for the installation. For example, create the installation on drive D: on each machine.



If you exit the Setup part of the installation program, all Content Server registry entries are deleted. To install a component that was not previously installed, you must go through the complete Setup program.

**To create the server installation on the host computer:**

1. Log in to the host system using the installation owner account.  
Use an account that is a member of the local Administrators group.  
On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name and password. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.
2. To install from the Documentum download site:
  - a. Navigate to the correct product directory.
  - b. Navigate to the server version corresponding to your operating system and database.
3. To install from a CD:
  - a. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  - b. On the CD, navigate to the subfolder corresponding to your operating system and database.
4. Save the compressed distribution file from the CD or the FTP site to your hard disk.
5. Navigate to the file's location on your hard disk.
6. Double-click the file.  
The following files are extracted from the compressed file:  
bofcollaborationSetup.jar  
bofworkflowSetup.jar  
consistency\_checker.ebs  
dfcoperatingsystemSetup.jar  
serveroperatingsystemSetup.jar  
serverWinSuiteSetup.exe (Windows) or  
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin (UNIX and Linux)  
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.jar  
tcfSetup.jar  
tomcatoperatingsystem4127Setup.jar
7. Double-click the file named serverWinSuiteSetup.exe.  
The Setup program starts and a Welcome dialog box is displayed.
8. Read the information on the dialog box and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies operating system requirements.

9. Choose installation directories for Content Server and DFC.
  - a. Click **Next** to accept the default Content Server installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different installation directory.  
The default directory is C:\Documentum.
  - b. To install the DFC developer documentation, select the checkbox.
  - c. To install the Primary Interop Assembly, select the checkbox.  
Check the Primary Interop Assembly Installer checkbox to request installation of a Microsoft installer package (.msi file) for the DFC primary interop assembly (PIA), or leave the box unchecked if you do not wish to have the package installed. The installer places the installer package for the DFC PIA into the setup subdirectory of the program root.
  - d. Click **Next**.
  - e. Click **Next** to accept the default DFC installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.  
A dialog box is displayed indicating the default user directory. This directory is used by DFC during the checkout or export of documents.
  - f. Click **Next** to accept the default User directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.
  - g. Designate a repository that is a business objects framework global registry for the DFC to use.
  - h. Type the global registry user's user login name and password for the repository.  
Do not check **Validate Entries** or the installer fails.
10. To enable Trusted Content Services, select the checkbox and type in the Trusted Content Services license key, then click **Next**.
11. To enable Content Services for EMC Centera, select the checkbox and type in the Content Services for EMC Centera license key, then click **Next**.
12. Type the port numbers for the Java Method Server.
  - The first port is the primary port used by the Java Method Server (Apache Tomcat) for communications with Content Server.  
The default port is 9080.
  - The second port is the port used for Tomcat administration.  
The default port is 9007.The ports must not be used by another application and must not be the ports used by Site Caching Services.
13. Click **Next**.  
A panel displays the software to be installed.

14. If any components already exist on the host computer, click **Yes** or **Yes to All** to replace the older components.  
A panel displays information about the products installed and their locations and indicates that the installation is complete.
15. Click **Next**.  
The Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment and Documentum Content Server software are installed.
16. Choose whether to continue with server configuration.
  - To configure the server immediately, click **Configure server now** and click **Next**.
  - To configure the server at another time, click **Configure server later** and click **Next**.
17. Click **Next**.
18. Choose whether to restart the host now or later.  
The installation is not complete until the host is restarted.
  - To restart the host immediately, click **Yes, restart my system** and click **Finish**.  
The host restarts.
  - To restart the host later, click **No, restart my system at a later time** and click **Finish**.  
Server installation is complete.
19. Ensure that the resource group is on the first node.

## Configuring the repository

This section describes how to configure a repository and its associated connection broker. Perform this part of the installation after the installation files have been copied to your system, and the Setup program has shut down and restarted your system.

Follow these instructions to create the servers on both nodes and the repository on the shared drive.

### To configure the repository:

1. Log in to Windows as the Documentum installation owner.  
If the setup process continues automatically, a Welcome dialog box is displayed. If the setup process does not continue automatically, follow these steps:
  - a. Restart the host manually.
  - b. After the reboot is completed, log in as the Documentum installation owner.  
The resource group has been moved to the second node.

- c. Move the resource group to the first node.
  - d. Navigate to the DM\_HOME/install directory.
  - e. Double-click the Server\_Configuration\_Program.exe file.  
A welcome dialog box is displayed.
2. Click **Next**.  
The Installation Owner Password dialog box is displayed.
3. Type the installation owner's password and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies the password.
4. If you did not enable Trusted Content Services during installation, optionally choose to enable TCS, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
5. If you did not enable Content Services for EMC Centera during installation, optionally choose to enable the feature, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
6. Click **Custom Configuration** and click **Next**.
7. Choose whether to configure a connection broker, a repository, or both, and click **Next**.
  - If you checked connection broker, the Connection Broker Configuration dialog box is displayed.
  - If you checked repository but not connection broker, the repository Configuration Dialog box is displayed. Skip to [Step 9](#).
8. Configure a connection broker on the Content Server host.
  - a. Choose **Create a New Connection Broker** and click **Next**.
  - b. Type the connection broker name and the port number on which the connection broker listens.  
The default port is 1489.
  - c. Choose **Manual connection broker startup**.  
Do not configure more connection brokers.
  - d. Click **Next**.
9. Configure a repository.
  - a. Click **Create a New Repository** and then click **Next**.  
The Data Directory dialog box is displayed. The data directory is where Content Server stores content files.
  - b. Click **Next** to accept the default data directory location, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**.

Do not choose a directory that is used by another repository for content file storage or any other purpose. The data directory location must be on the shared disk partition that belongs to the cluster resource group.

The Share Directory Destination dialog box is displayed.

- c. Click **Next** to accept the default share directory location, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**.

The Share directory is where client products, sample code, and libraries are stored.

The Repository Information dialog box is displayed.

- d. Type the name of the repository.

For more information on the repository name, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).

If you are installing on the *second* node, use the same repository name you used for the *first* node.

- e. Type the repository ID.

For more information on the repository ID, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).

If you are installing on the second node, use the same repository ID you used for the first node.

- f. Select the repository size.
- g. Select the authentication domain.
- h. Indicate whether the repository service starts automatically or manually.
- i. Click **Next**.
- j. Choose the mode in which clients connect to the repository.
  - Check **Native** for unsecure connections
  - Check **Secure** for secure connections
  - Check **Native and Secure** if clients can use either connection mode.
- k. Click **Next**.

10. If you are installing on the *first* node, choose **Create a new database user account**, then provide database information.

- a. Choose the correct database connection string for your database instance.
  - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
  - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
  - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
- b. Type the database user's name.

The database user's name defaults to the repository name. The user becomes the repository owner.

- c. Type the database user's password and confirm the password.
- d. Type the database administrator's user name and password.
- e. Click **Next**.
- f. Accept the default paths and sizes for database storage or change them and click **Next**.
  - On Oracle, these are the Data Tablespace Data File Path and Index Tablespace Data File Path
  - On SQL Server, these are the Data Device File Path and Log Device File Path
  - On DB2, these are the Tablespace File Path and Index Data File Path

The tablespace or database creation dialog box is displayed.

- g. Edit or accept the default database scripts.
  - To edit the tablespace or database creation or deletion script, select the script and click Edit Script. When you have saved the file, click **Next**.
  - To accept the default scripts and run them, click **Next**.

The new tablespaces or databases are created.

11. If you are configuring the *second* node, chose **Use an existing database account** and provide database information.
  - a. Choose the correct database connection string for the database instance you are using.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.

Use the account you created for the first node. This user is the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password.
  - d. Click **Next**.
  - e. Choose the correct index tablespace or data file name.
  - f. Click **Next**.

12. Type the connection broker connection information for the connection broker to which you want the repository to project.

This information is used to create the server.ini file. The default connection broker is the connection broker on the server host, but the repository can project to any connection broker on your network.

- a. Type the connection broker port number.  
The port number is the port where the connection broker listens.
  - b. Type the connection broker host name and click **Next**.  
The connection broker connection is tested.
13. Accept or modify the server.ini and webcache.ini files.  
The server.ini file contains Content Server initialization information. The webcache.ini file contains Site Caching Services initialization information.
- To accept the files, click **Next**.
  - To edit the server.ini file, select Server Initialization File and click **Edit Script**. After you save the file, click **Next**.
  - To edit the webcache.ini file, select WebCache Initialization File and click **Edit Script**. After you save the file, click **Next**.

The server starts and the Edit Scripts dialog box is displayed.

14. If you are installing on the *second* node, transfer the aek.key file from the first to the second node:
- a. On the second node, delete the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\secure\ aek.key file.
  - b. Copy the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\secure\ aek.key file from the first node to the same location on the second node.
  - c. On the second node, navigate to %DM\_HOME%\bin.
  - d. Open a command line and run this command:  

```
dm_encrypt_password -docbase repository_name -rdbms
-encrypt database_password
```
  - e. Restart the server on the second node.

15. If you are installing on the *first* node, select Repository Headstart and click **Edit Script**.

16. Modify the Repository Headstart script to point to the location object of the shared drive on which the repository resides.

- a. Locate these lines:

```
status=dmAPISet("set,c,l,file_system_path", dataHome & Basic.PathSeparator$ _
& docbaseName & Basic.PathSeparator$ & "content_storage_01")
```

- b. Change them to

```
status=dmAPISet("set,c,l,file_system_path", drive_
letter:\documentum\data\repositoryname\content_storage_01")
```

where *drive\_letter* is the shared drive where the repository data directory resides.

17. Indicate whether to edit any other scripts.

Run the default scripts unless you are very familiar with the internal configuration of Content Server.

- To run the default repository configuration scripts, click **Next**.
- To edit additional repository configuration scripts, select the script and click **Edit**. Click **Next** after you edit and save any of the scripts.

The scripts run and the repository is configured.

18. If you are installing on Windows, provide SMTP server information.

The SMTP server is used to send email notifications to the installation owner and repository users.

- a. Type the name or IP address of a computer on your network that hosts an SMTP Server.

The computer can be a remote host or the computer hosting Content Server. All UNIX operating systems and Windows 2000 Server include an SMTP server.

- b. Type the installation owner's email address.

- c. Click **Next**.

If the configuration program cannot connect with the SMTP server, a warning message is displayed. Provide a valid host name or address for the SMTP server or ignore the warning and proceed with the installation.

19. To use the current repository as the global registry repository, select **Use this Repository** and click **Next**.

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Accept the user login name of the global registry user or type in a new user login name.
- b. Type the global registry user's password.
- c. Confirm the global registry user's password and click **Next**.

20. To use a different repository as the global registry repository, select **Specify a Different Repository** and click **Next**

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Type the repository name.

The repository must be known to the connection broker you specified during DFC installation.

- b. Type the user login name of the global registry user for the repository.



- c. Type the global registry user's password.
21. To designate the global registry repository at a different time, select **Do Later** and click **Next**.
22. If you are enabling SSL, indicate whether to restart the repository and click **Next**.  
Restarting the repository enables secure client connections to the server.
23. Choose whether to restart the repository service in order to enable SSL (secure) client connections.
  - To enable SSL (secure) client connections, click **Restart repository now** and click **Next**.  
The repository stops and is restarted.
  - To restart the repository at a different time, click **Restart repository later** and click **Next**.
24. Click **Finish**.
25. On AIX, restart the repository.  
This loads required full-text plugins.
26. If you created a new repository on a host where Thumbnail Server is already installed, manually configure the `base_url`:
  - a. Determine the value of `base_url`.
    - The `base_url` attribute takes the following format:  
`http://host:port/thumbsrv/getThumbnail?`  
*host* is the name of the host where you are installing. The value of *host* can be the machine name (for example, *isadora*) or a fully-qualified name (for example, *isadora.mycompany.com*).  
*port* is the primary Thumbnail Server port you provided when you installed Thumbnail Server.
    - The Thumbnail Server installation log contains the value of `base_url` for the host. The log is located in `%DM_HOME%\thumbsrv\install\install.log`.
  - b. Use IDQL or Documentum Administrator to connect to the repository as a superuser.
  - c. Execute the following query to set `base_url`:  

```
UPDATE dm_filestore OBJECTS SET base_url='base_url' WHERE media_type=1
```

*base\_url* is the value you determined in [Step a](#) above.
  - d. Disconnect from the repository.
27. Shut down Content Server and the connection broker.
28. Move the cluster group to the second node.

29. Use the instructions in [Creating the Server installation on the host, page 200](#) and [Configuring the repository, page 203](#) to repeat the installation and configuration procedures for the second node.
30. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).  
The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

## Configuring the connection brokers

You must configure the connection brokers on both nodes to listen on the virtual network host.

### To configure the connection brokers:

1. Start Server Manager by clicking **Start**→**Programs**→**Documentum**→**Server Manager**.
2. Highlight **connection broker** and click **Edit Service**.
3. Add the following line to the service command:  
`-host virtual_network_host_name`  
For example, if the virtual network host name is dmcluster1:  
`-host  
dmcluster1`
4. Click **OK**.
5. Highlight **repository** and click **Edit server.ini**.
6. Edit the connection broker\_PROJECTION\_TARGET section of the server.ini file:  
`[connection broker_PROJECTION_TARGET]`  
`host=virtual_network_host_name`  
For example:  
`host = dmcluster1`
7. Save the server.ini file.
8. Navigate to C:\Windows or C:\WINNT and open the dmcl.ini file in a text editor.
9. Edit the connection broker\_PRIMARY section of the dmcl.ini file:

```
[connection broker_PRIMARY]
host=virtual_network_host_name
For example:
host = dmcluster1
```

10. Save the dmcl.ini file.
11. Repeat these steps on the other node.

## Creating additional cluster resources

Use these procedures to create cluster resources for the connection broker and Content Server. Perform the procedures only on the node that *currently* owns the existing resource group.

Be sure to perform both procedures.

### To create the connection broker cluster resource:

1. Open the Cluster Administrator utility.
2. Highlight the name of the existing cluster group, for example, dmgroup1.
3. Click **File**→**New**→**Resource**.
4. In the **Name** field, type `connection broker`.
5. In the **Resource Type** field, select **Generic Service**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. In the **Possible Owners** dialog box, ensure that both nodes are in the Possible Owners list box and click **Next**.
8. Move the virtual network host name from the Available Resources list box to the Resource Dependencies list box and click **Next**.
9. Type the connection broker service name and click **Use Network Name as Computer Name**.  
To locate the connection broker service name, click **Start**→**Administrative Tools**→**Services** and double-click **Documentum connection broker Service connection broker**. The Service Name field value is the connection broker service name.
10. Click **Next**.
11. Click **Finish**, then click **OK**.
12. Highlight connection broker and select **File**→**Bring Online**.

### To create the server cluster resource:

1. Open the Cluster Administrator utility.
2. Highlight the name of the existing cluster group.
3. Click **File**→**New**→**Resource**.

4. In the Name field, type *repository\_name*Docbase.  
For example, if the repository name is theodora, type theodoraDocbase.
5. In the Resource Type field, select Generic Service.
6. Click Next.
7. In the Possible Owners dialog box, ensure that both nodes are in the Possible Owners list box and click Next.
8. Move the shared disk partition, virtual network name, and connection broker from the Available Resources list box to the Resource Dependencies list box, then click Next.
9. Type *dmServerrepository\_name* as the service name.
10. Click Use Network Name as Computer Name.
11. Click Next.
12. Click Finish, then click OK.
13. Bring the Content Server generic service resource on line by highlighting *repository\_name*Docbase and selecting File→ Bring Online.

## Verifying failover

After you complete the preceding procedures, verify that failover works properly.

### To verify failover:

1. On a client machine, ensure that the dmcl.ini entries refer to the virtual network host name or virtual IP address.
2. Connect to the repository from the client machine.
3. Start the Cluster Administrator utility.
4. Move the resource group from the node where it is running to the other node.
5. After the resource group comes online on the other node, verify that the client can execute queries.

## Configuring an active/active cluster

In an active/active cluster, each node initially has its own repository and server. You create two cluster resource groups, and each node owns one. Each cluster resource group has its own virtual IP address, virtual network host name, one shared disk drive

(where the repository resides), one connection broker, and one Content Server. If a server fails on one node, a second server starts on the second node to keep the repository on the first node running.

To configure an active/active cluster, you must complete the procedures in the following sections:

- [Creating the first cluster resource group, page 213](#)
- [Creating the Server installation on the hosts, page 214](#)
- [Configuring the first repository, page 216](#)
- [Configuring the second cluster resource group, page 223](#)
- [Configuring the second repository, page 224](#)
- [Modifying server.ini and dmcl.ini, page 230](#)
- [Creating the connection broker generic service resource, page 230](#)
- [Creating the Content Server service resource, page 231](#)
- [Verifying failover, page 232](#)

## Creating the first cluster resource group

Use this procedure to set up the first cluster resource group.

### To create the first cluster resource group:

1. Use the MSCS Cluster Administrator utility on the first node to create a cluster resource group containing the following resources:
  - A virtual IP address  
This is the IP address of the first repository.
  - A virtual network host name  
This is the virtual host name for the IP address. It must have a dependency with the virtual IP address.
  - A shared disk partition  
This is where the repository content files are stored.
2. Take the resource group on line and move it back and forth between the two machines.  
This is to ensure that the IP address, virtual network host name, and shared disk partition fail over properly.
  - a. In the Cluster Administrator, right-click the cluster group name.
  - b. Click **Move Group**.  
The group is toggled between the nodes and the **Owner** column changes.

3. Ensure that the first node owns the resource cluster group.

## Creating the Server installation on the hosts

On each of the two nodes, copy the files from the installation media to create an Content Server installation on each node.

Use the same drive on each node. For example, create the installation on drive D: on each machine.

The first part of the installation process copies files from the installation media to your hard disk and sets environment variables needed by Content Server.

If you use the Cancel button to exit the Setup part of the installation program, all Content Server registry entries are deleted. To install a component that was not previously installed, you must go through the complete Setup program.

### **To create the server installation on the host computer:**

1. Log in to the host system using the installation owner account.  
Use an account that is a member of the local Administrators group.  
On Windows, user accounts are not case-sensitive, but Content Server installation fails if you connect to the host using the incorrect case in the user name. For example, if the account is set up as JPSmith and you connect as jpsmith, you can log in to the host, but server installation fails.
2. To install from the Documentum download site:
  - a. Navigate to the correct product directory.
  - b. Navigate to the server version corresponding to your operating system and database.
3. To install from a CD:
  - a. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.
  - b. On the CD, navigate to the subfolder corresponding to your operating system and database.
4. Save the compressed distribution file from the CD or the FTP site to your hard disk.
5. Navigate to the file's location on your hard disk.
6. Double-click the file.  
The following files are extracted from the compressed file:  
bofcollaborationSetup.jar  
bofworkflowSetup.jar  
consistency\_checker.ebs

dfcoperatingsystemSetup.jar  
serveroperatingsystemSetup.jar  
serverWinSuiteSetup.exe (Windows) or  
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.bin (UNIX and Linux)  
serveroperatingsystemSuiteSetup.jar  
tcfSetup.jar  
tomcatoperatingsystem4127Setup.jar

7. Double-click the file named serverWinSuiteSetup.exe.  
The Setup program starts and a Welcome dialog box is displayed.
8. Read the information on the dialog box and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies operating system requirements.
9. Choose installation directories for Content Server and DFC.
  - a. Click Next to accept the default Content Server installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different installation directory.  
The default directory is C:\Documentum.
  - b. To install the DFC developer documentation, select the checkbox.
  - c. To install the Primary Interop Assembly, select the checkbox.  
Check the Primary Interop Assembly Installer checkbox to request installation of a Microsoft installer package (.msi file) for the DFC primary interop assembly (PIA), or leave the box unchecked if you do not wish to have the package installed. The installer places the installer package for the DFC PIA into the setup subdirectory of the program root.
  - d. Click **Next**.
  - e. Click Next to accept the default DFC installation directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.  
A dialog box is displayed indicating the default user directory. This directory is used by DFC during the checkout or export of documents.
  - f. Click **Next** to accept the default User directory or click **Browse** to choose a different directory.
10. To enable Trusted Content Services, select the checkbox and type in the Trusted Content Services license key, then click **Next**.
11. To enable Content Services for EMC Centera, select the checkbox and type in the Content Services for EMC Centera license key, then click **Next**.
12. Type the port numbers for the Java Method Server.
  - The first port is the primary port used by the Java Method Server (Apache Tomcat) for communications with Content Server.  
The default port is 9080.

- The second port is the port used for Tomcat administration.  
The default port is 9007.  
The ports must not be used by another application and must not be the ports used by Site Caching Services.
13. Click **Next**.  
A panel displays the software to be installed.
  14. If any components already exist on the host computer, click **Yes** or **Yes to All** to replace the older components.  
A panel displays information about the products installed and their locations and indicates that the installation is complete.
  15. Click **Next**.  
The Documentum Foundation Classes (DFC) Runtime Environment and Documentum Content Server software are installed.
  16. Choose whether to continue with server configuration.
    - To configure the server immediately, click **Configure server now** and click **Next**.
    - To configure the server at another time, click **Configure server later** and click **Next**.
  17. Click **Next**.
  18. Choose whether to restart the host now or later.  
The installation is not complete until the host is restarted.
    - To restart the host immediately, click **Yes, restart my system** and click **Finish**.  
The host restarts.
    - To restart the host later, click **No, restart my system at a later time** and click **Finish**.  
Server installation is complete.
  19. Repeat the server installation on the second node in the cluster.

## Configuring the first repository

This section describes how to configure the first repository and its associated connection broker. Perform this part of the installation after the installation files have been copied to both machines, and the Setup program has shut down and restarted them.

You must perform these steps twice. The first time sets up the first repository and server on the first node. The second time sets up the first repository's failover server on the second node.



**To configure the first repository:**

1. Log in to Windows as the Documentum installation owner.
  - The first time through these instructions, connect to the first node and configure a server and repository.
  - The second time through these instructions, connect to the second node and configure the failover server.

If the setup process continues automatically, a Welcome dialog box is displayed. If the setup process does not continue automatically, follow these steps:

- a. Restart the host manually.
  - b. After the reboot is completed, log in as the Documentum installation owner.  
The resource group has been moved to the second node.
  - c. Move the resource group to the first node.
  - d. Navigate to the DM\_HOME/install directory.
  - e. Double-click the Server\_Configuration\_Program.exe file.  
A welcome dialog box is displayed.
2. Click **Next**.  
The Installation Owner Password dialog box is displayed.
  3. Type the installation owner's password and click **Next**.  
The installer verifies the password.
  4. If you did not enable Trusted Content Services during installation, optionally choose to enable TCS, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
  5. If you did not enable Content Services for EMC Centera during installation, optionally choose to enable the feature, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
  6. Click **Custom Configuration** and click **Next**.
  7. Choose whether to configure a connection broker, a repository, or both, and click **Next**.
    - If you checked connection broker, the connection broker Configuration dialog box is displayed.
    - If you checked repository but not connection broker, the repository Configuration Dialog box is displayed. Skip to [Step 9](#).
  8. Configure a connection broker on the Content Server host.
    - a. Choose **Create a New connection broker** and click **Next**.
    - b. Type the connection broker name and the port number on which the connection broker listens.  
The default port is 1489.

- c. Choose **Manual connection broker** startup.  
Do not configure additional connection brokers.
  - d. Click **Next**.
9. Configure a repository.
- a. Click **Create a New Repository** and then click **Next**.  
The Data Directory dialog box is displayed. The data directory is where Content Server stores content files.
  - b. Click **Next** to accept the default data directory location, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**. Do not choose a directory that is used by another repository for content file storage or any other purpose.  
The Share Directory Destination dialog box is displayed. The Share directory is where client products, sample code, and libraries are stored.
  - c. Click **Next** to accept the default share directory location, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**.  
The Repository Information dialog box is displayed.
  - d. Type the name of the repository.  
For more information on the repository name, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).  
If you are installing on the *second* node, use the same repository name you used for the first node.
  - e. Type the repository ID.  
For more information on the repository ID, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).  
If you are installing on the *second* node, use the same repository ID you used for the first node.
  - f. Select the repository size.  
Use the same size on both nodes.
  - g. Select the authentication domain.
  - h. Check **Manual** for repository startup type.
  - i. Click **Next**.
  - j. Choose the mode in which clients connect to the repository.
    - Check **Native** for unsecure connections
    - Check **Secure** for secure connections
    - Check **Native and Secure** if clients can use either connection mode.
  - k. Click **Next**.

10. If you are configuring the repository on the *first* node, choose **Create a new database user account**, then provide database information.
  - a. Choose the correct database connection string for your database instance.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.  
The database user's name defaults to the repository name. The user becomes the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password and confirm the password.
  - d. Type the database administrator's user name and password.
  - e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Accept the default paths and sizes for database storage or change them and click **Next**.
    - On Oracle, these are the Data Tablespace Data File Path and Index Tablespace Data File Path
    - On SQL Server, these are the Data Device File Path and Log Device File Path
    - On DB2, these are the Tablespace File Path and Index Data File Path

The tablespace or database creation dialog box is displayed.
  - g. Edit or accept the default database scripts.
    - To edit the tablespace or database creation or deletion script, select the script and click Edit Script. When you have saved the file, click **Next**.
    - To accept the default scripts and run them, click **Next**.

The new tablespaces or databases are created.
11. If you are configuring the *second* node, choose **Use an existing database account** and provide database information.
  - a. Choose the correct database connection string for the database instance you are using.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.  
Use the account you created for the first node. This user is the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password.
  - d. Click **Next**.

- e. Choose the index tablespace or data file name for your database and ensure that you use the same one both times through these instructions.
  - f. Click **Next**.
12. Type the connection broker connection information for the connection broker to which you want the repository to project.

This information is used to create the server.ini file. The default connection broker is the connection broker on the server host, but the repository can project to any connection broker on your network.

  - a. Type the connection broker port number.

The port number is the port where the connection broker listens.
  - b. Type the connection broker host name and click **Next**.

The connection broker connection is tested.
13. Accept or modify the server.ini and webcache.ini files.

The server.ini file contains Content Server initialization information. The webcache.ini file contains Site Caching Services initialization information.

  - To accept the files, click **Next**.
  - To edit the server.ini file, select Server Initialization File and click **Edit Script**. After you save the file, click **Next**.
  - To edit the webcache.ini file, select WebCache Initialization File and click **Edit Script**. After you save the file, click **Next**.

The server starts and Edit Scripts dialog box is displayed.
14. If you are installing on the second node, transfer that the aek.key file from the first to the second node:
  - a. On the second node, delete the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\secure\ aek.key file.
  - b. Copy the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\secure\ aek.key file from the first node to the same location on the second node.
  - c. On the second node, navigate to %DM\_HOME%\bin.
  - d. Open a command line and run this command:

```
dm_encrypt_password -docbase repository_name -rdbms
-encrypt database_password
```
  - e. Restart the server on the second node.
15. Provide SMTP server information.

The SMTP server is used to send email notifications to the installation owner and repository users.

- a. Type the name or IP address of a computer on your network that hosts an SMTP Server.  
The computer can be a remote host or the computer hosting Content Server. All UNIX operating systems and Windows 2000 Server include an SMTP server.
  - b. Type the installation owner's email address.
  - c. Click **Next**.  
If the configuration program cannot connect with the SMTP server, a warning message is displayed. Provide a valid host name or address for the SMTP server or ignore the warning and proceed with the installation.
16. To use the current repository as the global registry repository, select **Use this Repository** and click **Next**.  
The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).
    - a. Accept the user login name of the global registry user or type in a new user login name.
    - b. Type the global registry user's password.
    - c. Confirm the global registry user's password and click **Next**.
  17. To use a different repository as the global registry repository, select **Specify a Different Repository** and click **Next**.  
The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).
    - a. Type the repository name.  
The repository must be known to the connection broker you specified during DFC installation.
    - b. Type the user login name of the global registry user for the repository.
    - c. Type the global registry user's password.
  18. To designate the global registry repository at a different time, select **Do Later** and click **Next**.
  19. If you are enabling SSL, indicate whether to restart the repository and click **Next**.  
Restarting the repository enables secure client connections to the server.
  20. If you are installing on the *second* node, click **Cancel** and skip to the next section, [Configuring the second cluster resource group, page 223](#).
  21. If you are installing on the *first* node, select Repository Headstart and click Edit Script.

22. Modify the Repository Headstart script to point to the location object of the shared drive on which the repository resides.

- a. Locate these lines:

```
status=dmAPISet("set,c,l,file_system_path", dataHome & Basic.PathSeparator$ _  
                & docbaseName & Basic.PathSeparator$ & "content_storage_01")
```

- b. Change them to

```
status=dmAPISet("set,c,l,file_system_path", drive_  
letter:\documentum\data\repositoryname\content_storage_01")
```

where *drive\_letter* is the shared drive where the repository data directory resides.

Ensure that the directory referenced in the script exists.

23. Indicate whether to edit any other scripts.

Run the default scripts unless you are very familiar with the internal configuration of Content Server.

- To run the default repository configuration scripts, click **Next**.
- To edit the repository configuration scripts, click **Edit**. Click **Next** after you edit and save any of the scripts.

The scripts run and the repository is configured.

24. Choose whether to restart the repository service in order to enable SSL (secure) client connections.

- To enable SSL (secure) client connections, click **Restart repository now** and click **Next**.

The repository stops and is restarted.

- To restart the repository at a different time, click **Restart repository later** and click **Next**.

25. Click **Finish**.

26. If you created a new repository on a host where Thumbnail Server is already installed, manually configure the `base_url`:

- a. Determine the value of `base_url`.

- The `base_url` attribute takes the following format:

```
http://host:port/thumbsrv/getThumbnail?
```

*host* is the name of the host where you are installing. The value of *host* can be the machine name (for example, *isadora*) or a fully-qualified name (for example, *isadora.mycompany.com*).

*port* is the primary Thumbnail Server port you provided when you installed Thumbnail Server.

- The Thumbnail Server installation log contains the value of `base_url` for the host. The log is located in `%DM_HOME%\thumbsrv\install\install.log`.
  - b. Use IDQL or Documentum Administrator to connect to the repository as a superuser.
  - c. Execute the following query to set `base_url`:
 

```
UPDATE dm_filestore OBJECTS SET base_url='base_url' WHERE media_type=1
```

*base\_url* is the value you determined in [Step a](#) above.
  - d. Disconnect from the repository.
27. Shut down Content Server and the connection broker.
  28. Move the cluster group to the second node.
  29. Repeat steps 1 to 26 on the second node to create the failover repository.
  30. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).  
The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

## Configuring the second cluster resource group

Use these instructions to create the second cluster resource group.

### To create the second cluster resource group:

1. Use the MSCS Cluster Administrator utility on the second node to create a cluster resource group containing the following resources:
  - A virtual IP address  
This is the IP address for the second repository.
  - A virtual network host name  
This is the virtual host name for the IP address. It should have a dependency with the virtual IP address.
  - A shared disk partition  
This is the location of the repository data directory.
2. Take the resource group on line and move it back and forth between the two machines.  
This is to ensure that the IP address, virtual network host name, and shared disk partition fail over properly.
  - a. In the Cluster Administrator, right-click the cluster group name.

- b. Click **Move Group**.  
The group is toggled between the nodes and the **Owner** column changes.
3. Ensure that the second node owns the resource group.

## Configuring the second repository

This procedure creates the second repository and configures primary and failover servers for the repository, one on each machine.

You must perform these steps twice. The first time sets up the second repository and server on the second node. The second time sets up the failover server on the first node.

### To configure the second Repository:

1. Log in to Windows on as the Documentum installation owner.
  - The *first* time through these instructions, connect to the *second* node and configure a repository and server.
  - The *second* time through these instructions, connect to the *first* node and configure a failover server for the repository.

If the setup process continues automatically, a Welcome dialog box is displayed. If the setup process does not continue automatically, follow these steps:

  - a. Navigate to the DM\_HOME/install directory.
  - b. Double-click the Server\_Configuration\_Program.exe file.  
A welcome dialog box is displayed.
2. Click Next.  
The Installation Owner Password dialog box is displayed.
3. Type the installation owner's password and click Next.  
The installer verifies the password.
4. If you did not enable Trusted Content Services during installation, optionally choose to enable TCS, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
5. If you did not enable Content Services for EMC Centera during installation, optionally choose to enable the feature, type in the license key, and click **Next**.
6. Click **Custom Configuration** and click **Next**.
7. Choose whether to configure a connection broker, a repository, or both, and click **Next**.
  - If you checked connection broker, the connection broker Configuration dialog box is displayed.



- If you checked repository but not connection broker, the repository Configuration Dialog box is displayed. Skip to [Step 9](#).
8. Configure a connection broker on the Content Server host.
    - a. Choose **Create a New connection broker** and click **Next**.
    - b. Type the connection broker name and the port number on which the connection broker listens.  
The default port is 1489.
    - c. Choose Manual connection broker startup.
    - d. Click **Next**.
  9. Configure a repository.
    - a. Click **Create a New Repository** and then click **Next**.  
The Data Directory dialog box is displayed. The data directory is where Content Server stores content files. The data directory location must be on the shared disk partition that belongs to the cluster resource group
    - b. Click **Next** to accept the default data directory location, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**. Do not choose a directory that is used by another repository for content file storage or any other purpose.  
The Share Directory Destination dialog box is displayed. The Share directory is where client products, sample code, and libraries are stored.
    - c. Click **Next** to accept the default share directory location, or click **Browse** to select a different location, then click **Next**.  
The Repository Information dialog box is displayed.
    - d. Type the name of the repository.  
If this is the *second* time through these instructions and you are configuring the failover server on the first node, use the same repository name you used for the second node.  
For more information on the repository name, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).
    - e. Type the repository ID.  
If this is the *second* time through these instructions and you are configuring the failover server on the first node, use the same repository ID you used for the second node.  
For more information on the repository ID, refer to [Repository name and ID, page 35](#).
    - f. Select the repository size.  
Use the same size on both nodes.

- g. Select the authentication domain.
  - h. Choose **Manual** repository startup.
  - i. Click **Next**.
  - j. Choose the mode in which clients connect to the repository.
    - Check **Native** for unsecure connections
    - Check **Secure** for secure connections
    - Check **Native and Secure** if clients can use either connection mode.
  - k. Click Next.
10. If you are installing on the second node, check Create new account and provide database information.
- a. Choose the correct database connection string for your database instance.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.

The database user's name defaults to the repository name. The user becomes the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password and confirm the password.
  - d. Type the database administrator's user name and password.
  - e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Accept the default paths and sizes for database storage or change them and click **Next**.
    - On Oracle, these are the Data Tablespace Data File Path and Index Tablespace Data File Path
    - On SQL Server, these are the Data Device File Path and Log Device File Path
    - On DB2, these are the Tablespace File Path and Index Data File Path

The tablespace or database creation dialog box is displayed.
  - g. Edit or accept the default database scripts.
    - To edit the tablespace or database creation or deletion script, select the script and click Edit Script. When you have saved the file, click **Next**.
    - To accept the default scripts and run them, click **Next**.

The new tablespaces or databases are created.
11. If you are configuring the first node, check Use Existing and provide database information corresponding to the information you provided when you configured the second node.

- a. Choose the correct database connection string for the database instance you are using.
    - On Oracle, select the connection string from the dropdown list.
    - On SQL Server, select an ODBC Datasource from the dropdown list
    - On DB2, select the database name from the dropdown list
  - b. Type the database user's name.  
Use the account you created for the second node. This user is the repository owner.
  - c. Type the database user's password.
  - d. Click **Next**.
  - e. Choose the correct index tablespace or data file name.
  - f. Click **Next**.
12. Type the connection broker connection information for the connection broker to which you want the repository to project.  
This information is used to create the server.ini file. The default connection broker is the connection broker on the server host, but the repository can project to any connection broker on your network.
- a. Type the connection broker port number.  
The port number is the port where the connection broker listens.
  - b. Type the connection broker host name and click **Next**.  
The connection broker connection is tested.
13. Accept or modify the server.ini and webcache.ini files.  
The server.ini file contains Content Server initialization information. The webcache.ini file contains Site Caching Services initialization information.
- To accept the files, click **Next**.
  - To edit the server.ini file, select Server Initialization File and click **Edit Script**. After you save the file, click **Next**.
  - To edit the webcache.ini file, select WebCache Initialization File and click **Edit Script**. After you save the file, click **Next**.
- The Edit Scripts dialog box is displayed.
14. Transfer the aek.key file from the second to the first node:
- a. On the first node, delete the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\secure\sek.key file.
  - b. Copy the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\secure\sek.key file from the second node to the same location on the first node.
  - c. On the first node, navigate to %DM\_HOME%\bin.

- d. Open a command line and run this command:

```
dm_encrypt_password -docbase repository_name -rdbms  
-encrypt database_password
```

- e. Restart the server on the first node.

15. Provide SMTP server information.

The SMTP server is used to send email notifications to the installation owner and repository users.

- a. Type the name or IP address of a computer on your network that hosts an SMTP Server.

The computer can be a remote host or the computer hosting Content Server. All UNIX operating systems and Windows 2000 Server include an SMTP server.

- b. Type the installation owner's email address.

- c. Click **Next**.

If the configuration program cannot connect with the SMTP server, a warning message is displayed. Provide a valid host name or address for the SMTP server or ignore the warning and proceed with the installation.

16. To use the current repository as the global registry repository, select **Use this Repository** and click **Next**.

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Accept the user login name of the global registry user or type in a new user login name.
- b. Type the global registry user's password.
- c. Confirm the global registry user's password and click **Next**.

17. To use a different repository as the global registry repository, select **Specify a Different Repository** and click **Next**

The global registry repository is used for storing SBOs and network locations. For more information on the global registry and global registry user, refer to [Global registry, page 31](#) and [Preparing for the global registry, page 56](#).

- a. Type the repository name.  
The repository must be known to the connection broker you specified during DFC installation.
- b. Type the user login name of the global registry user for the repository.
- c. Type the global registry user's password.

18. To designate the global registry repository at a different time, select **Do Later** and click **Next**.
19. If you are enabling SSL, indicate whether to restart the repository and click **Next**. Restarting the repository enables secure client connections to the server.
20. If you are configuring the failover server on the *first* node, click **Cancel** and exit the configuration program.
21. If you are configuring the repository and server on the **second** node, select **Repository Headstart** and click **Edit Script**.
22. Modify the Repository Headstart script to point to the location object of the shared drive on which the repository resides.

- a. Locate these lines:

```
status=dmAPISet("set,c,l,file_system_path", dataHome & Basic.PathSeparator$ _
& docbaseName & Basic.PathSeparator$ & "content_storage_01")
```

- b. Change them to

```
status=dmAPISet("set,c,l,file_system_path",drive_
letter:\documentum\data\repositoryname\content_storage_01")
```

where *drive\_letter* is the shared drive where the repository data directory resides.

Ensure that the directory referenced in the script exists.

23. Choose whether to edit any other scripts.  
Run the default scripts unless you are very familiar with the internal configuration of Content Server.
  - To run the default repository configuration scripts, click **Next**.
  - To edit the repository configuration scripts, click **Edit**. Click **Next** after you edit and save any of the scripts.

The scripts run and the repository is configured.
24. Shut down Content Server and the connection broker.
25. Move the resource group to the first node.
26. Repeat these steps to configure the second repository on the first node.
27. After you configure the second repository on the first node, move the cluster group to the first node.

## Modifying server.ini and dmcl.ini

You may want to edit server.ini and dmcl.ini on both nodes to ensure that each repository projects to the connection brokers on the two nodes.

In the follow examples, assume that the virtual network hosts for the two cluster resource groups are called dmcluster1 and dmcluster2. It does not matter which cluster resource group is primary and which is backup.

Edit all four of the server.ini files so that they read as follows:

```
[connection broker_PROJECTION_TARGET]
host=dmcluster1
[connection broker_PROJECTION_TARGET_1]
host=dmcluster2
```

Edit the two dmcl.ini files so that they read as follows:

```
[connection broker_PRIMARY]
host=dmcluster1
[connection broker_BACKUP_0]
host=dmcluster2
```

## Creating the connection broker generic service resource

Configure the second connection broker as a generic service resource for the second resource group.

**To create the connection broker generic service resource:**

1. On both machines, ensure that the user who configured the cluster has read and write permission on the directory where connection broker logs are stored.  
This is typically *drive:\documentum\dba\log*.
2. On the node that currently owns the second resource group, open the Cluster Administrator utility.
3. Highlight the name of the second resource group and select **File→New→Resource**.
4. In the **Name** field, type `ConnectionBroker2`.
5. In the **Resource Type** field, choose **Generic Service**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Ensure that both nodes are listed in the **Possible Owners** list box and click **Next**.
8. Move the virtual network host name from the **Available Resources** list box to the **Resource Dependencies** list box and click **Next**.

9. Type the following in Command Line, substituting the driver letter where the server is installed for *drive* and the virtual network host name for the second cluster resource group for *virtual\_network\_hostname*:

```
drive:\documentum\product\5.2\bin\dmconnection broker.exe
-host virtual_network_hostname
-logfile drive:\documentum\dba\log\connection broker2.log
```

10. Type *drive*:\documentum in the Current Directory field.
11. Click Use Network Name as Computer Name and click Next.
12. Click Finish, then OK.
13. Highlight the cluster resource ConnectionBroker2 and click File→ Bring Online.

## Creating the Content Server service resource

You must create a service resource for Content Server on the node that owns the second resource group.

### To create the Content Server service resource:

1. On the node that owns the second resource group, open the Cluster Administrator utility.
2. Highlight the name of the second resource group and select File→ New→ Resource.
3. In the Name field, type *repository\_name*Docbase.
4. In the Resource Type field, choose Generic Service.
5. Click Next.
6. Ensure that both nodes are listed in the Possible Owners list box and click Next.
7. Move the shared disk partition, virtual network name and connection broker2 from the Available Resources list box to the Resource Dependencies list box and click Next.
8. Type *dmServerrepository\_name* as the service name.
9. Click Use Network Name as Computer Name and click Next.
10. Click Finish, then OK.
11. Highlight the cluster resource *repository\_name*Docbase and click File→ Bring Online.

## Verifying failover

After you complete the preceding procedures, verify that failover works properly.

**To verify failover:**

1. On a client machine, ensure that the dmcl.ini entries refer to both virtual network host name or virtual IP address.
2. Connect to both repositories from the client machine.
3. Start the Cluster Administrator utility.
4. Move the two resource groups back and forth between the nodes.
5. After a resource group comes online on a new node, verify that the client can execute queries.

## Upgrading a repository installed with Cluster Services

Use the following general procedure to upgrade a repository installing with Microsoft Cluster Services.

**To upgrade an active/passive, single-repository cluster:**

1. Shut down the Content Servers on both nodes.  
This shuts down the repository.
2. Shut down both hosts.
3. Restart the first node.  
Do not restart the Content Server on the first node.
4. On the first node, upgrade the server software.  
Use the instructions in [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host](#), page 122.
5. Upgrade and configure the repository and connection broker.  
Use the instructions in [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository](#), page 126. Complete all of the instructions, including running the scripts that configure the repository.
6. Open the Services dialog box and verify that the Java method server was created correctly.



If the service called Documentum Java method server is started, it was created correctly.

7. Test the repository to verify that it is functioning correctly.
8. Shut down the repository on the first node.
9. Shut down the first node.
10. Start the second node.
11. Start the connection broker on the second node.
12. Upgrade the server software on the second node.  
Use the instructions in [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host, page 122](#).
13. Start the configuration program and choose Custom Configuration.  
Use the instructions in [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository, page 126](#).
14. Choose upgrade and the repository to upgrade.
15. When the configuration program reaches the panel on which scripts are run, click **Cancel**.  
Do not run the scripts. The Java method server is created and the repository is upgraded.
16. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).  
The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

Use the following general procedure to upgrade a repository installing with Microsoft Cluster Services. It applies to both active/passive and active/active installations.

**To upgrade an active/active, two-repository cluster:**

1. Shut down the running Content Servers on both nodes.  
This shuts down both repositories.
2. Shut down both hosts.
3. Restart the first node.  
Do not start the Content Servers on the first node.
4. On the first node, upgrade the server software.  
Use the instructions in [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host, page 122](#).
5. Upgrade and configure the repository and connection broker.

Use the instructions in [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository, page 126](#). Complete all of the instructions, including running the scripts that configure the repository.

6. Open the Services dialog box and verify that the Java method server was created correctly.

If the service called Documentum Java method server is started, it was created correctly.

7. Test the repository to verify that it is functioning correctly.
8. Shut down the repository on the first node.
9. Shut down the first node.

10. Start the second node.

11. Start the connection broker on the second node.

12. Upgrade the server software on the second node.

Use the instructions in [Upgrading the Server software installation on the host, page 122](#).

13. Start the configuration program and choose Custom Configuration.

Use the instructions in [Upgrading the connection broker, the Server and the repository, page 126](#).

14. Choose upgrade and the repository to upgrade.

15. When the configuration program reaches the panel on which scripts are run, click **Cancel**.

Do not run the scripts. The Java method server is created and the repository is upgraded.

16. Start the Tomcat instance running the Java method server and ACS server using the instructions in [Starting and stopping the Java method server, page 136](#).

The Tomcat instance starts automatically only on Windows hosts that restart after installation.

# Configuring Multiple Servers on a Single Host for a Particular Repository

Multiple Content Servers can be run on a single host against a particular repository. This appendix provides instructions for creating such a configuration..

## Windows hosts

Use these instructions after a repository is configured to create additional servers for that repository on the repository host. (For instructions on configuring additional servers for a repository on remote hosts, refer to the section called “Server Load Balancing” in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*.)

### To configure additional servers on a Windows host:

1. Connect to the repository as a Superuser using IAPI or Documentum Administrator and create a new server config object.  
For example, if the existing server config object is called caruso, call the new server config object caruso1.
2. Disconnect from the repository.
3. Create a server.ini file for the new server.
  - a. On the server host file system, navigate to the %DOCUMENTUM%\dba\config\repository\_name directory, where repository\_name is the name of the repository.
  - b. Create a copy of the server.ini file called server1.ini.
  - c. Open the server1.ini file and add these lines:  

```
service=caruso1
server_config_name=caruso1
```
  - d. Save the server1.ini file.

4. Navigate to the \Winnt\System32\drivers\etc\ and open the services file in a text editor.

5. Assign port numbers to the new server.

For example, if these entries exist for the primary server

```
dm_caruso 10000/tcp # repository service caruso
dm_caruso_s 10001/tcp # repository secure service
```

Add the following entries for the new server:

```
dm_carusol 10005/tcp # repository service carusol
dm_carusol_s 10006/tcp # repository secure service
```

6. Save the services file.
7. Create Windows registry entries for the new server.
  - a. Open the registry and back it up.
  - b. Navigate to HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\.
  - c. Locate the service key for the existing Content Server.
  - d. Use the Save Key menu to write out the key values for the existing Content Server service.
  - e. Create a new key with a new name.
  - f. Restore the key values you wrote out to the new key.
  - g. Change the ImagePath variable to include the path to the new server.ini file and a new log file.

For example, if the existing ImagePath is

```
d:\Documentum\product\5.3\bin\dmserver_v4.exe -repository_name
test1 -security acl -init_file
d:\Documentum\dba\config\test1\server.ini -run_as_service
-install_owner dmadmin -logfile
d:\Documentum\dba\log\test1.log
```

The new ImagePath would be:

```
d:\Documentum\product\5.3\bin\dmserver_v4.exe -repository_name
test1 -security acl -init_file
d:\Documentum\dba\config\test1\server1.ini -run_as_service
-install_owner dmadmin -logfile
d:\Documentum\dba\log\test1_1.log
```

For additional information on creating a new service, refer to Windows documentation from Microsoft.

8. Set the new server to manual start mode using **Start→Programs→Administrative Tools→Services** panel.
9. Restart the host.

10. Click **Start**→**Programs**→**Administrative Tools**→**Services** and start up the new server.
11. Start IDQL and verify that the server is running correctly:  

```
$ IDQL caruso.carusol -Username -Ppassword
```

## UNIX hosts

Use these instructions after a repository is configured to create additional servers for that repository on the repository host. (For instructions on configuring additional servers for a repository on remote hosts, refer to the section called “Server Load Balancing” in the *Content Server Administrator’s Guide*.)

To create this configuration, you must edit the `etc/services` file, which requires root privileges.

### To configure additional servers on a UNIX host:

1. Connect to the repository as a Superuser using IAPI or Documentum Administrator and create a new server config object.  
For example, if the existing server config object is called `caruso`, call the new server config object `carusol`.
2. Disconnect from the repository.
3. Create a `server.ini` file for the new server.
  - a. On the server host file system, navigate to the `$DOCUMENTUM/dba/config/repository_name` directory, where `repository_name` is the name of the repository.
  - b. Create a copy of the `server.ini` file called `server1.ini`.
  - c. Open the `server1.ini` file and add these lines:  

```
service=carusol  
server_config_name=carusol
```
  - d. Save the `server1.ini` file.
4. Navigate to `/etc/services` and open the `services` file in a text editor.
5. Assign port numbers to the new server.

For example, if these entries exist for the primary server

```
dm_caruso 10000/tcp # repository service caruso  
dm_caruso_s 10001/tcp # repository secure service
```

Add the following entries for the new server:

```
dm_carusol 10005/tcp # repository service carusol  
dm_carusol_s 10006/tcp # repository secure service
```

6. Save the services file.

7. Navigate to the \$DOCUMENTUM/dba directory and make a copy of the repository startup and shutdown scripts:

```
cp dm_start_caruso dm_start_carusol
cp dm_shutdown_caruso dm_shutdown_carusol
```

8. Open the startup script in a text editor.

9. Change

```
logfile=$logdir/caruso.log
to
logfile=$logdir/carusol.log
```

10. Change

```
./documentum -repository_name caruso -security acl -init_file
/trout1/documentum/dba/config/caruso/server.ini $@ >> $logfile 2>&1 &
```

to

```
./documentum -repository_name caruso -security acl -init_file
/trout1/documentum/dba/config/carusol/server1.ini $@ >> $logfile 2>&1 &
```

11. Open the shutdown script in a text editor.

12. Change

```
DM_PID=`./iapi caruso -U$DM_DMADMIN_USER -P -e << EOF |
grep 'root_pid' | sed -e 's/ .*[: A-Za-z]//'
```

to

```
DM_PID=`./iapi caruso.carusol -U$DM_DMADMIN_USER -P -e << EOF |
grep 'root_pid' | sed -e 's/ .*[: A-Za-z]//'
```

13. Change

```
./iapi caruso -U$DM_DMADMIN_USER -P -e << EOF
```

to

```
./iapi caruso.carusol -U$DM_DMADMIN_USER -P -e << EOF
```

14. Save the shutdown file.

15. Start both servers:

```
dm_start_caruso
dm_start_carusol
```

16. Start IDQL and verify that the server is running correctly:

```
$ IDQL caruso.carusol -Username -Ppassword
```

17. Check the log file for the new server in \$DOCUMENTUM/dba/log/caruso1.log.





## A

- accounts
  - installation owner, 44
  - repository owner, 46, 71
- active/active clusters
  - configuring cluster resource groups, 223
  - connection broker generic application resources, 230
  - Content Server service resources, 231
  - described, 199, 213
  - dmcl.ini file, 230
  - first cluster resource group, 213
  - installing Content Server, 214
  - repository configuration, 216, 224
  - server.ini file, 230
  - verifying failover, 232
- active/passive clusters
  - configuring, 199
  - configuring the repository, 203
  - connection broker configuration, 210
  - creating resource groups, 200
  - creating resources, 211
  - described, 198
  - installing Content Server, 200
  - verifying failover, 212
- administering Content Server, 24
- administrative tool scripts, 135
- aek.key file, 64, 66
- Apache Tomcat, 18, 27, 61, 136
  - Java method server, 24
- application server
  - running Java methods, 24
- application servers, 42, 48
  - WDK applications, 26
- assume user program, 140
- authentication domains, 44

## B

- backing up key store files, 140

- backups
  - formats, 60
  - repository, 60
- base\_url, 98, 111, 209, 222

## C

- change password program, 140
- characters, restricted, 48
- ci\_schema\_install.ebs script, 184
- client connections, 29
- clients directory, 181
- cluster resource groups
  - creating, 200
  - resources, 200
- cluster resources
  - creating, 211
- code pages, 70
  - supported, 36
- Collaborative Services, 34
- common directory, 181
- config directory, 180
- configuration
  - basic server installation, 183
  - default, 183
  - file locations, 181
  - objects, described, 185
  - overview, 186
  - repositories, 105, 126
  - requirements, 50
- configuration decisions, 28
  - distributed configurations, 30
  - repository size, 29
- configuring
  - repositories, 95
- configuring Content Server, 25
- CONNECT privileges, 46, 55
- connecting to database, 70
- connection broker
  - required ports, 25
- connection brokers

- creation, 18
- described, 19
- generic application resources, 230
- in resource groups, 198
- Microsoft Cluster Services, 210
- preinstallation requirements, 23
- consistency checker, running, 63
- Content Rendition Services users, 20
- content replication, 30
- Content Server
  - administering, 24
  - Collaborative Services, 34
  - configuration, 25
  - connection types, 29
  - Content Services for EMC Centera, 33
  - Content Storage Services, 34
  - databases, 22
  - in resource groups, 198
  - installation owner, 45
  - installing Content Server, 154
  - internationalization, 36
  - multiserver configurations, 30
  - operating systems, 22
  - quick start, 13
  - Retention Policy Services, 35
  - service resource, 231
  - supported host locales, 36
  - supported upgrade paths, 58
  - Trusted Content Services, 33
  - uninstalling, 147
  - uninstalling Content Server, 143, 145 to 146
- Content Services for EMC Centera, 33 to 34
  - HP Itanium platform, 34
- content storage areas, 20
- Content Storage Services, 34
- content-addressed storage, 33
- copying repositories, 64
- create\_fulltext\_objects.ebs, 185
- csec\_plugin\_upgrade\_53.ebs, 184
- custom configuration
  - described, 29
- cyclic groups, 176

## D

- data dictionary locales, 37
- data directories, described, 180
- data storage, 72

- data\_dictionary.ini file, 37
- database
  - code page, 37
- database accounts, 70
- database aliases, 73
- database location, 197
- database performance, 84
- database requirements
  - repository owner, 46, 71
  - UTF-8 code page, 70
- database tables, 72
- database user account, 55
- database\_refresh\_interval key, 64
- databases
  - code page, 70
  - Content Server, 22
  - DB2, 81
  - DB2 performance, 72
  - installation location, 70
  - Oracle performance, 72
  - Oracle requirements, 73
  - preinstallation checklists, 159
  - requirements, 69
  - requirements for upgrade, 62
  - SQL Server requirements, 75
  - Sybase, 78
  - UTF-8, 62
  - Windows requirements, 70
- DB2
  - current configuration, 82
  - database-managed space, 83
  - environment variables, 82
  - internationalization, 82
  - performance improvements, 72
  - performance wizard, 81
  - Performance Wizard, 84
  - preinstallation checklist, 162
  - repository owner requirements, 46, 55
  - requirements, 81
  - UTF-8, 82
- dba directory, 180
- dd\_populate.ebs script, 184
- desktop\_client.ebs script, 184
- dfc.ebs script, 184
- directories
  - clients, 181
  - common area, 181
  - config, 180
  - content storage, 197

- data, 180
- dba, 180
- DM\_HOME, 181
- event subdirectory, 181
- events, 181
- log, 180
- product, 179
- required for installation, 50
- SDK, 182
- share, 181
- temp, 182
- version, 50
- disk space requirements, 31
- disks, shared, 197
- display\_config\_setup.ebs script, 184
- distributed configurations, 30
  - disk space requirements, 31
  - full-text indexing, 31
  - host requirements, 25
  - installation requirements, 31, 44, 51
  - installing primary site, 91, 101
  - installing secondary sites, 91, 101
  - network requirements, 27
  - shared content model, 31
  - Trusted Content Services, 31, 33
  - upgrading, 60
  - UTC time, 31, 44, 51
- distributed content, 61
- dm\_apply\_formats.ebs script, 183
- dm\_cas\_install.ebs, 185
- dm\_change\_password, 49
- dm\_check\_password, 49
- dm\_gwm\_install.ebs script, 184
- DM\_HOME environment variable, 50, 181
- dm\_ldap\_install.ebs script, 184
- dm\_root\_task script, 49
- dm\_routerConv\_install.ebs script, 183
- dm\_wfTimer\_upgrade.ebs, 185
- dm\_xml\_install.ebs script, 184
- Dmbasic method server, 19
- dmcl.ini file, 230
- DocApps, installing, 30
- docu, 35
- Documentum Administrator, 24
  - adding groups, 137
- Documentum Business Process Services, 27, 62
- Documentum Content Intelligence Services, 184

- DOCUMENTUM environment
  - variable, 50
- Documentum Foundation Classes
  - dfc.ebs script, 184
  - installing, 18
  - upgrading on UNIX and Linux, 62
  - upgrading on Windows, 62
- Documentum Media Services, 98, 111, 209, 222
- Documentum Offline Client, 184
- domains
  - Windows, 156

## E

- effects of installing Content Server, 18
- electronic signatures, 33
- EMC Documentum Site Caching Services, 31
- EMC Documentum Web Publisher, 31
- enabling repository configuration script
  - tracing, 175
- encrypted filestores, 33
- environment variables, 50
  - DB2, 82
  - DM\_HOME, 50
  - DOCUMENTUM, 50
  - installation owner environment, 53
  - LANG, 37
  - library path, 166
  - ORACLE\_HOME, 73
  - PATH, 42
  - Sybase, 78
- events subdirectory, 181
- exiting installation, 92, 102, 113, 201, 214
- express configuration
  - described, 28
- external password checking, 52
- external password validation, 52

## F

- failover, 198
- failover verification, 232
- failover, verifying, 212
- federations, 30
  - Trusted Content Services, 31
- file stores, 21
- file system permissions, 51
- files

- aek.key, 64, 66
- data\_dictionary.ini, 37
- server.ini, 72
- services, 55 to 56, 152
- Sybase configuration, 78
- tnsnames.ora, 73 to 74
- formats, 60
- full-text indexing
  - component configuration, 28
  - disk space, 31
  - distributed configurations, 31
  - index agent, 23, 28
  - index server, 24, 28
  - installation requirements, 31
  - planning, 60

## G

- generic application resources, 230
- global registry
  - Collaborative Services, 34
  - distributed configurations, 33
  - network locations, 31
  - SBOs, 31
- group
  - required, 51
- groups, 52, 137
  - described, 51
  - installation owner, 52, 55

## H

- hardware requirements, 150
- headstart.ebs script, 183
- host locales, 37
- host name requirement, 25
- host preparation
  - UNIX, 48
- hosts, 25
- HP Itanium, 33

## I

- icons, 21
- ID, repository, 35
- index agent
  - described, 23
  - required ports, 25
- index server
  - described, 24
  - required ports, 25

- installation
  - described, 18
  - quick start, 13
  - UNIX, 18
  - upgrading, 18
  - Windows, 18
- installation owner
  - case-sensitivity of user name, 44
  - changing, 139
  - described, 20, 45
  - domains, 45, 75
  - environment variables, 53
  - password, 44
  - required accounts, 51
  - required permissions On UNIX and Linux, 50
  - root account, 52
  - SQL Server, 45, 75
  - SQL Server authentication, 45
  - SQL Server requirements, 75
  - Sybase requirements, 78
  - tasks, 45, 53
  - uninstalling Content Server, 143, 145 to 146
  - UNIX, 52
  - user name, 44
  - Windows domain requirements, 45
  - Windows requirements, 45
  - Windows rights, 45
- installation owner group, 52
- installation requirements
  - WDK and WDK applications, 42, 48
- installing
  - copying server software, 17
  - documentation, 17
  - sequence, 17
- installing content server
  - required ports, 25
- installing Content Server
  - application server requirement, 24
  - basic configuration for server, 183
  - code page requirement, 79
  - configuration requirements, 50
  - configuration scripts, 183
  - configuring repositories, 203, 216
  - connection brokers, 18 to 19
  - Content Services for EMC Centera, 34
  - copying software, 92, 102, 113, 214
  - custom, 101
  - custom configuration, 29

- database, 81
- database requirements, 23
- database user account, 55
- DB2, 81, 83, 86
- described, 18
- directory structure, 179
- distributed configurations, 25, 30
- Dmbasic method server, 19
- DocApps, 30
- effects, 18
- effects of upgrade, 21
- environment variables, 53
- exiting, 92, 102, 113, 201, 214
- express, 91
- express configuration, 28
- groups required, 51
- hardware requirements, 150
- icons, 21
- index agent, 23, 28
- index server, 24, 28
- initial, 91
- installation accounts, 26
- Java method server, 18
- Microsoft Cluster Services, 197
- multiple servers on UNIX and Linux, 235
- multiple servers on Windows, 235
- multiserver configurations, 25
- options, 28
- preinstallation tasks, 150
- preparing, 41
- program folder, 21
- repository creation, 18
- repository owner account, 54
- repository size, 29
- required accounts, 51
- restricted characters, 48
- security concerns, 26
- services file entries, 152
- SMTP mail server, 24
- software requirements, 22
- SQL Server case-sensitivity, 76
- supported clients, 22
- system sizing, 27
- typical configurations, 25
- UNIX, 18, 38
- UNIX group accounts required, 45, 55
- upgrading Content Server, 38
- user accounts, required, 52, 55
- UTF-8 code page, 79

- WDK applications, 26
- Windows, 18, 21, 38
- installing DocApps, 30
- internationalization, 36
  - data dictionary locales, 37
  - database code page, 37
  - server host code pages, 36
  - server host locales, 36
  - SQL Server, 76
  - Unicode, 37
  - UTF-8, 62, 79

## J

- Java method server, 18, 24, 27, 62, 136
  - required ports, 25
- Java methods, running, 24

## K

- key store files, backing up, 140

## L

- LANG environment variable, 37
- Linux, 33
- Listener, Oracle, 73
- local administrators group, 45
- local database installations, 70
- locales, data dictionary, 37
- location objects, 21
- log directory, 180
- Log Purge job, 138
- logs, server installation, 132

## M

- Media Services user, 20
- Microsoft Cluster Services
  - active/active clusters, 197, 199
  - active/passive clusters, 197 to 198
  - configuration options, 198
  - configuring active/active clusters, 213
  - configuring active/passive clusters, 199, 203
  - configuring connection brokers, 210
  - configuring the repository, 216
  - connection broker projection, 230
  - Content Server service resource, 231
  - content storage directories, 197
  - database location, 197

- Documentum configurations, 198
- installation choices, 198
- modifying dmcl.ini, 230
- modifying server.ini file, 230
- preinstallation tasks, 197
- repository owner, 47
- resource groups, 198
- shared disks, 197
- user permissions, 197
- verifying failover, 232

multiserver configurations, 25, 30

## N

- name, repository, 35
- names
  - server config object, 35
- native connections, 29, 56
- network cards, 27
- network location objects, 31
- networks requirements, 27

## O

- object replication, 30, 61
- object type categories, 187
- ODBC configuration, 76
- ODBC data sources
  - repository owner, 47
- offline\_config\_setup.ebs script, 184
- operating systems
  - Content Server, 22
- Oracle
  - code pages, 73
  - CONNECT privileges, 46, 55
  - database aliases, 74
  - environment variables, 73
  - Listener, 73
  - optimizing, 74
  - ORACLE\_HOME, 73
  - performance improvements, 72
  - preinstallation checklist, 160
  - preinstallation requirements, 73
  - repository owner requirements, 46
  - RESOURCE privileges, 46, 55
  - restrictions, 73
  - SQL\*Net, 73
  - TNS aliases, 74
  - tnsnames.ora file, 73 to 74

- ORACLE\_HOME environment
  - variable, 73
- order of uninstalling, 143

## P

- passwords, 44, 46
- PATH environment variable, 42
- performance improvements, 72
- permissions, file system, 51
- port numbers, 56
- ports
  - connection broker, 23
  - Java method server, 27, 61
  - native connections, 55
  - required, 25
  - secure connections, 55
- postinstallation tasks
  - adding groups, 137
  - adding users, 137
  - administrative tool script, 135
  - Log Purge job, enabling, 138
  - PURGE AUDIT, enabling, 138
  - reviewing server installation logs, 132
  - Update Statistics tool, 138
- preinstallation checklists
  - connection broker configuration, 159
  - creating a new repository, 155
  - database, 159
  - DB2, 162
  - installing Content Server, 154
  - new repository, 155
  - Oracle, 160
  - SQL Server, 160
  - Sybase, 162
  - tasks, 150
  - upgrading a repository, 152, 158
  - upgrading Content Server, 158
- preinstallation requirements
  - configuration decisions, 28
  - connection brokers, 23
  - database, 70
  - database administrator account, 72
  - database code page, 37, 70
  - database configuration, 86 to 87
  - database performance, 84
  - databases, 23
  - DB2, 81, 84
  - directories, 50
  - DM\_HOME, 50

- environment variables, 53
  - group accounts, 52
  - groups, 51
  - host name, 25
  - hosts, 25
  - installation directory, 50
  - networks, 27
  - performance improvements, 72
  - repository owner, 71
  - root password, 155
  - services file entries, 152
  - SMTP mail server, 24
  - software, 22 to 23
  - SQL Server, 75
  - supported code pages, 36
  - TCP/IP, 27
  - user accounts, 52
  - UTF-8 code page, 79
  - video card, 25
  - XWindows, 49
  - preparing
    - Windows hosts, 41
  - product directory, described, 179
  - program folder, 21
  - PURGE AUDIT job, 138
- ## Q
- quick start, installation, 13
- ## R
- Regional Settings, 43
  - remote database installations, 70
  - remote domains, 45, 75
  - replicate\_bootstrap.ebs script, 184
  - repositories
    - active/active clusters, 216
    - active/passive cluster, 199
    - backups, 60
    - configuring, 95, 105, 126, 203, 216, 224
    - content storage areas, 20
    - copying, 64
    - creating, 18, 155
    - file stores, 21
    - formats, 60
    - global registry, 31
    - ID, 35
    - installing DocApps, 30
    - limitation on name length, 152
    - location objects, 21
    - name, 35, 152
    - older, 63
    - owner, 46, 55
    - required user privileges, 52, 55
    - services file entries, 56
    - size, 29, 71
    - user accounts, 51
    - user authentication, 47
    - users, 19, 47, 55
  - repository configuration failure, 174
  - repository configuration scripts
    - ci\_schema\_install.ebs, 184
    - create\_fulltext\_objects.ebs, 185
    - csec\_plugin\_upgrade\_53.ebs, 184
    - dd\_populate\_install.ebs, 184
    - desktop\_client.ebs, 184
    - dfc.ebs, 184
    - display\_config\_setup.ebs, 184
    - dm\_apply\_formats.ebs, 183
    - dm\_cas\_install.ebs, 185
    - dm\_gwm\_install.ebs, 184
    - dm\_ldap\_install.ebs, 184
    - dm\_routerConv\_install.ebs, 183
    - dm\_wfTimer\_upgrade.ebs, 185
    - dm\_xml\_install.ebs, 184
    - headstart.ebs, 183
    - offline\_config\_setup.ebs, 184
    - replicate\_bootstrap.ebs, 184
    - templates.ebs, 183
    - toolset.ebs, 184
    - upgrade\_java\_methods\_51.ebs, 184
  - repository copies, 64, 66
  - repository federations, 25
    - Trusted Content Services, 33
  - upgrading, 60
  - repository ID, 35
  - repository name, 35
  - repository owner
    - database privileges, 71
    - database requirements, 46
    - DB2, 46, 55
    - described, 19, 71
    - Microsoft Cluster Services, 47
    - Oracle, 46
    - password, 46
    - RDBMS account, 71
    - required privileges, 54 to 55
    - required Windows privileges, 46
    - SQL Server, 47

- Sybase, 55
- UNIX, 54
- user name, 46
- Windows, 46
- Windows requirements, 47
- required accounts
  - installation owner, 51
  - repository owner, 51
  - repository users, 51
- requirements
  - disk space, 31
  - ports, 25
- reserved terms, 35
- resource groups, 198
- RESOURCE privileges, 46, 55
- restricted characters, 48
- Retention Policy Services, 35
- root account, 52
- root password, 155, 158
- root task, 49
- running Java methods, 24

**S**

- scripts
  - dm\_root\_task, 49
  - repository configuration, 183
  - server configuration, 207, 221, 229
- SDK directory, 182
- secure connections, 29, 56
- security concerns, 26
- semaphore requirements, 51
- server config object, 35
- server host locales, supported, 36
- server installation logs, 132
- server.ini file, 72, 230
- services file, 55, 152
  - port numbers, 56
  - service name, 56
- share directory, described, 181
- shared content configurations, 31
- shared disks, 197
- shared memory requirements, 51
- size of repository, 29, 71
- SMTP mail server, 24, 43
- SQL Server
  - authentication, 75
  - case sensitivity, 76
  - custom installation, 75
  - enabling case-sensitivity, 75

- enabling row-level locking, 75
- installation owner, 75
- internationalization, 76
- ODBC configuration, 76
- preinstallation checklist, 160
- repository owner requirements, 47
- requirements, 75

SQL Server requirements, 75

stalled server upgrade,  
troubleshooting, 176

storage areas, 20

supported upgrade paths, 38, 58

Sybase

- code pages, 80
- configuration file, 78
- devices, 79
- directory structure, 81
- environment variables, 78
- installation owner, 78
- internationalization, 79
- page size, 80
- parameters, 79
- preinstallation checklist, 162
- repository owner, 55
- requirements, 78
- upgrade requirements, 80
- UTF-8, 79

system performance, 72

system sizing, 27

**T**

- temp directory, described, 182
- templates.ebs script, 183
- Terminal Services, 61
- testing an upgrade, 64
- Thumbnail Server, 98, 111, 209, 222
- tnsnames.ora file, 73 to 74
- toolset.ebs script, 184
- troubleshooting
  - diagnosis, 171
  - enabling repository configuration  
script tracing, 175
  - repository configuration failure, 174
  - stalled server upgrade, 176
- Trusted Content Services
  - described, 33
  - distributed configurations, 31, 33
  - electronic signatures, 33
  - encrypted filestores, 33



- federations, 31
- multiserver configurations, 25
- port numbers, 56
- repository federations, 25, 33
- services file, 56

## U

- Unicode, 37
- uninstalling Content Server, 147
  - Content Server, 143
  - installation owner, 143, 145 to 146
  - order, 143
  - requirements, 143, 145 to 146
- UNIX
  - Documentum Foundation Classes, 62
  - host preparation, 48
  - installing Content Server, 18
  - installing multiple servers, 235
  - starting Tomcat, 137
  - stopping Tomcat, 137
  - upgrading Content Server, 38
- UNIX requirements, 49
  - accounts, 52, 55
  - directories, 50
  - environment variables, 50, 53
  - file system permissions, 51
  - group accounts, 51
  - groups, 51
  - installation owner, 52
  - installation owner account, 50
  - repository owner, 54
  - root account, 52
  - semaphores, 51
  - services file, 55
  - shared memory, 51
  - shells, 54
  - space available, 50
  - user accounts, 51
  - XWindows, 49
- unsecure connections, 29
- Update Statistics tool, 138
- upgrade\_java\_methods\_51.ebs script, 184
- upgrading Content Server
  - Apache Tomcat, 27, 61
  - backing up the repository, 60
  - checklist, 152
  - consistency checker, 63
  - database code page, 70
  - database\_refresh\_interval ey, 64

- described, 119 to 120
- distributed configurations, 60
- distributed content, 61
- Documentum Foundation Classes, 62
- effect on system, 21
- effects on system, 120
- full-text indexing, 60
- installation, 18
- object replication, 61
- older repositories, 63
- preinstallation checklist, 158
- repository federations, 60
- supported paths, 38
- supported upgrade paths, 58
- testing, 64
- UNIX, 38
- UTF-8, 62, 70
- Windows, 38
- user rights, 21
- users, 137
  - accounts, 55
  - authentication on Windows, 47
  - required accounts, 52
  - rights, 21
- UTC time, 31, 44, 51
- UTF-8 code page, 36, 70, 79

## V

- verifying failover, 212, 232
- version directory, 50
- video card requirement, 25
- virtual IP addresses, 198
- virtual network host names, 198

## W

- WDK and WDK applications, 42, 48
- WDK applications, 26
- Web Development Kit, 27, 62
- Windows
  - Documentum Foundation Classes, 62
  - host preparation, 41
  - installing Content Server, 18
  - installing multiple servers, 235
  - repository owner, 46
  - starting Tomcat, 136
  - stopping Tomcat, 136
  - upgrading Content Server, 38
  - user authentication, 47

Windows requirements

- authentication domain, 156
- authentication domains, 44
- database service, 70
- date format, 43
- installation owner account, 44
- installation owner user rights, 45
- local administrators group, 45
- Regional Settings, 43

- repository owner, 46
- SMTP mail server, 24, 43
- Terminal Services, 61
- user rights, 21

**X**

- XWindows, 49